

Aura Open Source Developer's Guide

CONTENTS

GETTING STARTED	1
Chapter 1: Introduction	1
Why Use Aura?	2
Components	2
Events	3
Browser Support	3
Aura Version Numbers	3
Chapter 2: Quick Start	5
Create an Aura App from the Command Line	6
Import an Aura App into Eclipse	6
Add a Component	7
Next Steps	8
Build Aura from Source	8
Aura Demos	10
CREATING COMPONENTS	11
Chapter 3: Components	11
Component Markup	12
Component Namespace	13
Viewing Components	13
Component Bundles	14
Component IDs	15
HTML in Components	15
CSS in Components	16
Component Attributes	17
Component Composition	18
Component Body	21
Component Facets	22
Best Practices for Conditional Markup	23
Lazy Loading	24
Localization	24
Adding Components to Apps	25
Providing Component Documentation	26
Chapter 4: Expressions	29
Dynamic Output in Expressions	30
Conditional Expressions	30

Contents

Data Binding in Expressions	31
Value Providers	33
Global Value Providers	34
Expression Evaluation	37
Expression Operators Reference	37
Expression Functions Reference	41
Chapter 5: UI Components	44
UI Events	47
Using the UI Components	47
Date and Time Fields	48
Number Fields	49
Text Fields	51
Rich Text Fields	53
Checkboxes	54
Radio Buttons	55
Buttons	57
Drop-down Lists	59
Field-level Errors	61
Menus	62
Horizontal Layouts	63
Vertical Layouts	64
Working with Auto-Complete	65
Creating Lists	67
Chapter 6: Using Labels	70
\$Label	71
Input Component Labels	71
Dynamically Populating Label Parameters	72
Dynamically Creating Labels	74
Customizing your Label Implementation	76
Setting Label Values via a Parent Attribute	76
Chapter 7: Supporting Accessibility	78
Accessibility Considerations	80
Button Labels	80
Carousels	80
Help and Error Messages	81
Audio Messages	81
Forms, Fields, and Labels	81
Images	82
Using Images	82
Events	83
Dialog Overlays	83

Menus	84
Chapter 8: Resolving Accessibility Errors	85
COMMUNICATING WITH EVENTS	89
Chapter 9: Events	89
Handling Events with Client-Side Controllers	90
Component Events	92
Component Event Example	94
Application Events	96
Application Event Example	98
Event Handling Lifecycle	100
Advanced Events Example	101
Firing Aura Events from Non-Aura Code	105
Events Best Practices	106
Events Anti-Patterns	106
Events Fired During the Rendering Lifecycle	107
CREATING APPS	111
Chapter 10: App Basics	111
App Overview	112
Designing App UI	112
Creating App Templates	113
Chapter 11: Styling Apps	115
Using External CSS	115
Vendor Prefixes	115
Chapter 12: Using JavaScript	117
Accessing the DOM	118
Using External JavaScript Libraries	118
Creating Reusable JavaScript Libraries	118
Working with Attribute Values in JavaScript	120
Working with a Component Body in JavaScript	122
Sharing JavaScript Code in a Component Bundle	123
Client-Side Rendering to the DOM	125
Client-Side Runtime Binding of Components	128
Modifying Components Outside the Framework Lifecycle	129
Validating Fields	130
Throwing and Handling Errors	132
Calling Component Methods	134
Making API Calls	135
Chapter 13: JavaScript Cookbook	136

Invoking Actions on Component Initialization	137
Detecting Data Changes	137
Finding Components by ID	138
Dynamically Creating Components	138
Dynamically Adding Event Handlers	141
Creating a Document-Level Event Handler	141
Dynamically Showing or Hiding Markup	142
Adding and Removing Styles	143
Chapter 14: Using Java	145
Essential Terminology	146
Reading Initial Component Data with Models	146
Java Models	146
JSON Models	148
Accessing Models in JavaScript	150
Creating Server-Side Logic with Controllers	150
Creating a Java Server-Side Controller	152
Calling a Server-Side Action	153
Queueing of Server-Side Actions	155
Abortable Actions	156
Background Actions	157
Caboose Actions	160
Storable Actions	160
Server-Side Rendering to the DOM	163
Server-Side Runtime Binding of Components	164
Serializing Exceptions	166
Chapter 15: Java Cookbook	167
Dynamically Creating Components in Java	168
Setting a Component ID	168
Getting a Java Reference to a Definition	169
Chapter 16: URL-Centric Navigation	170
Using Custom Events in URL-Centric Navigation	171
Accessing Tokenized Event Attributes	171
Using Layouts for Metadata-Driven Navigation	171
Using Custom Events in Metadata-Driven Navigation	173
Chapter 17: Using Object-Oriented Development	174
What is Inherited?	175
Inherited Component Attributes	176
Abstract Components	177
Interfaces	178
Marker Interfaces	178
Inheritance Rules	178

Chapter 18: Caching with Storage Service	180
Initializing Storage Service	182
Using Storage Service	183
Chapter 19: Using the AppCache	185
Enabling the AppCache	186
Loading Resources with AppCache	186
Specifying Additional Resources for Caching	186
Chapter 20: Controlling Access	188
Application Access Control	189
Interface Access Control	189
Component Access Control	189
Attribute Access Control	190
Event Access Control	190
TESTING AND DEBUGGING	191
Chapter 21: Testing Components	191
JavaScript Test Suite Setup	192
Pass a Controller Action in Component Tests	195
Fail a Test Only When Expected	195
Assertions	196
Debugging Components	198
Utility Functions	198
Sample Test Cases	200
Mocking Java Classes	202
Mocking Java Models	204
Mocking Java Providers	204
Mocking Java Actions	205
Chapter 22: Customizing Behavior with Modes	207
Modes Reference	208
Controlling Available Modes	210
Setting the Default Mode	210
Setting the Mode for a Request	210
Chapter 23: Debugging	212
Log Messages	213
Warning Messages	214
Debugging with Network Traffic	214
Aura Debug Tool	219
Querying State and Statistics	219
CUSTOMIZING AURA	222

Chapter 24: Plugging in Custom Code with Adapters	222
Default Adapters	223
Overriding Default Adapters	223
Chapter 25: Accessing Components from Non-Aura Containers	225
Add an Aura button inside an HTML div container	226
Chapter 26: Customizing Data Type Conversions	227
Registering Custom Converters	228
Custom Converters	229
REFERENCE	233
Chapter 27: Reference Overview	233
Reference Doc App	234
aura:application	234
aura:component	235
aura:clientLibrary	236
aura:dependency	238
aura:event	239
aura:if	239
aura:interface	240
aura:iteration	241
aura:method	242
aura:renderIf	243
aura:set	244
Setting Attributes Inherited from a Super Component	244
Setting Attributes on a Component Reference	245
Setting Attributes Inherited from an Interface	246
System Event Reference	246
aura:doneRendering	246
aura:doneWaiting	247
aura:locationChange	248
aura:systemError	248
aura:valueChange	249
aura:valueDestroy	250
aura:valuelnit	251
aura:waiting	251
Supported HTML Tags	252
Supported aura:attribute Types	252
Basic Types	253
Object Types	255
Collection Types	255
Custom Java Class Types	257

- Framework-Specific Types 257
- APPENDIX 259
- Chapter 28: Aura Request Lifecycle 259
 - Initial Application Request 260
 - Component Request Lifecycle 261
 - Component Request Overview 261
 - Server-Side Processing for Component Requests 262
 - Client-Side Processing for Component Requests 264
 - Component Request Glossary 265
- INDEX 268

GETTING STARTED

CHAPTER 1 Introduction

In this chapter ...

- [Why Use Aura?](#)
- [Components](#)
- [Events](#)
- [Browser Support](#)
- [Aura Version Numbers](#)

Aura is a UI framework for developing dynamic web apps for mobile and desktop devices. It's a modern framework for building single-page applications engineered for growth.

The framework supports partitioned multi-tier component development that bridges the client and server. It uses JavaScript on the client side and Java on the server side.

Why Use Aura?

There are many benefits of using Aura to build apps.

Out-of-the-Box Component Set

Comes with an out-of-the-box set of components to kick start building apps. You don't have to spend your time optimizing your apps for different devices as the components take care of that for you.

Performance

Uses a stateful client and stateless server architecture that relies on JavaScript on the client side to manage UI component metadata and application data. The client calls the server only when absolutely necessary; for example to get more metadata or data. The server only sends data that is needed by the user to maximize efficiency. The framework uses JSON to exchange data between the server and the client. It intelligently utilizes your server, browser, devices, and network so you can focus on the logic and interactions of your apps.

Event-driven architecture

Uses an event-driven architecture for better decoupling between components. Any component can subscribe to an application event, or to a component event they can see.

Faster development

Empowers teams to work faster with out-of-the-box components that function seamlessly with desktop and mobile devices. Building an app with components facilitates parallel design, improving overall development efficiency. Aura provides the basic constructs of inheritance, polymorphism, and encapsulation from object-oriented programming and applies them to presentation layer development. The framework enables you to extend a component or implement a component interface.

Components are encapsulated and their internals stay private, while their public shape is visible to consumers of the component. This strong separation gives component authors freedom to change the internal implementation details and insulates component consumers from those changes.

Device-aware and cross browser compatibility

Apps use responsive design and provide an enjoyable user experience. Aura supports the latest in browser technology such as HTML5, CSS3, and touch events.

Components

Components are the self-contained and reusable units of an app. They represent a reusable section of the UI, and can range in granularity from a single line of text to an entire app.

The framework includes a set of prebuilt components. You can assemble and configure components to form new components in an app. Components are rendered to produce HTML DOM elements within the browser.

A component can contain other components, as well as HTML, CSS, JavaScript, or any other Web-enabled code. This enables you to build apps with sophisticated UIs.

The details of a component's implementation are encapsulated. This allows the consumer of a component to focus on building their app, while the component author can innovate and make changes without breaking consumers. You configure components by setting the named attributes that they expose in their definition. Components interact with their environment by listening to or publishing events.

SEE ALSO:

[Components](#)

Events

Event-driven programming is used in many languages and frameworks, such as JavaScript and Java Swing. The idea is that you write handlers that respond to interface events as they occur.

A component registers that it may fire an event in its markup. Events are fired from JavaScript controller actions that are typically triggered by a user interacting with the user interface.

There are two types of events in the framework:

- **Component events** are handled by the component itself or a component that instantiates or contains the component.
- **Application events** are essentially a traditional publish-subscribe model. All components that provide a handler for the event are notified when the event is fired.

You write the handlers in JavaScript controller actions.

SEE ALSO:

[Events](#)

[Handling Events with Client-Side Controllers](#)

Browser Support

The framework supports the most recent stable version of the following web browsers across major platforms, with exceptions noted.

Browser	Notes
Google Chrome™	
Apple® Safari® 5+	For Mac OS X and iOS
Mozilla® Firefox®	
Microsoft® Internet Explorer®	We recommend using Internet Explorer 9, 10, or 11. Internet Explorer 7 and 8 may provide a degraded performance.



Note: For all browsers, you must enable JavaScript. We recommend enabling cookies.

Aura Version Numbers

Aura uses version numbers that are consistent with other Maven projects. This makes it easy for projects built with Maven to express their dependency on Aura.

The version number scheme is:

major.minor [**.incremental**] [**-qualifier**]

The `major`, `minor`, and optional `incremental` parts are all numeric. The `qualifier` string is optional. For example, `1.2.0`, `2.4`, or `2.5.0-SNAPSHOT` are all valid.

The `major` number advances and the `minor` and `incremental` counters reset to zero for releases with large functional changes. Within a major release, the `minor` number advances for small updates with enhancements and bug fixes. The `incremental` counter is only used for targeted fixes, usually for critical bugs.

The `qualifier` string is largely arbitrary. A version number that includes a `qualifier` is a non-release build. The compatibility guarantee is weaker, because the build is stabilizing towards a release. In order of increasing stability, the qualifier may be:

SNAPSHOT

An arbitrary development build. There are no assurances for such a build, as it's under active development.

msN

A milestone build. Some features can at least be demonstrated, but the build isn't ready for a full release. Feature behavior may change as the milestone progresses towards a release.

rcN

A release candidate, which is a build we think is close to a final release. However, it's still undergoing final checking and may change before an unqualified release.

A release build has a fixed `major`, `minor`, and `incremental` version. It's newer and preferable to any unqualified version with the same version number. For example, `x.y.z` is newer than `x.y.z-SNAPSHOT`.

Release candidates are always newer than any milestone, and a release candidate or milestone with a higher number is newer than others with lower numbers.

If you have the source code for the Aura framework, you can find the version number in the root folder's `pom.xml` file. For example:

```
<project ... >
  <name>Aura Framework</name>
  <version>0.273</version>
</project>
```

Although it will rarely be important, you can use the Java `ConfigAdapter.getAuraVersion()` method to see what version of Aura is running your code.

CHAPTER 2 Quick Start

In this chapter ...

- [Create an Aura App from the Command Line](#)
- [Import an Aura App into Eclipse](#)
- [Next Steps](#)

The quick start steps you through building and running your first Aura app from the command line, or in the Eclipse IDE. Choose the method you're most comfortable with and check out the next steps after you build an app.

Create an Aura App from the Command Line

You can generate a basic Aura app quickly using the command line. For details, see the `README.md` file in the [Aura repo](#).

SEE ALSO:

[Import an Aura App into Eclipse](#)

[Next Steps](#)

Import an Aura App into Eclipse

This section shows you how to import the Aura app you created in the command-line quick start into Eclipse.



Note: You must complete the [command-line quick start](#) before proceeding.

Before you begin, make sure you have this software installed:

1. [JDK 1.7](#)
2. [Apache Maven 3](#)
3. [Eclipse 3.7 or later](#) and the [m2eclipse plugin](#). Choose the Eclipse distribution for Java EE Developers. This includes JavaScript editing and other Web UI tools.

Step 1: Import the Command-Line Project into Eclipse

1. Click **File > Import... > Maven > Existing Maven Projects**.
2. Click **Next**.
3. In the **Root Directory** field, browse to the `helloWorld` folder created in the command-line quick start and click **OK**.
4. Click **Finish**.

You should now have a new project called `helloWorld` in the Package Explorer.

Step 2: Build and Run Your Project

1. Click **Run > Debug Configurations...**
2. Double click **Maven Build**.
3. Enter these values:
 - **Name:** HelloWorld Server
 - **Base directory:** `${workspace_loc:/helloWorld}` (where `helloWorld` is the same as your Artifact Id)
 - **Goals:** `jetty:run`



Note: To use another port, such as port 8080, append `-Djetty.port=8080` to `jetty:run`.

4. Click **Debug**.

You should see a message in the Eclipse Console window indicating that the Jetty server has started.

Step 3: Test Your App

1. Navigate to `http://localhost:8080` to test your app.

You will be redirected to `http://localhost:8080/helloWorld/helloWorld.app`.

2. Validate that your app is working by looking for "hello web" in the browser page.

SEE ALSO:

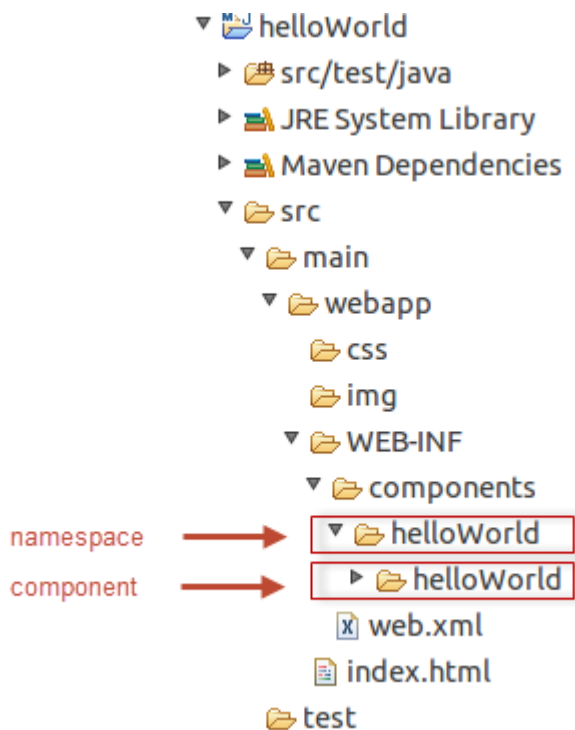
[Browser Support](#)

Add a Component

An Aura app is represented by a `.app` file composed of Aura components and HTML tags.

Components are the building blocks in your app and are grouped in a namespace. In addition to the required top-level `<aura:component>` tag in a component or `<aura:application>` tag in an application, you can insert user interface components using tags defined in the Aura component library.

In Eclipse, we'll add a component to our simple app. The following diagram shows the folder structure for the project. Under the `components` folder, there is a `helloWorld` folder representing the namespace. Under that folder is a sub-folder, also called `helloWorld`, which represents the application, which is a special type of component. This folder can also contain resources, such as CSS and JavaScript files. We will add a new component to the `helloWorld` namespace.



Step 1: Make a New Component

1. In Eclipse Package Explorer, right-click the `helloWorld` namespace folder under `components` and select **New > File**.
2. Create a new `hello` component in the namespace by entering these values:

Parent folder: `helloWorld/src/main/webapp/WEB-INF/components/helloWorld/hello`

File name: `hello.cmp`



Note: We're adding the component to a new `hello` folder under the `helloWorld` namespace folder.

3. Click **Finish**.

4. Open `hello.cmp` and enter:

```
<aura:component>
    Hello, world!
</aura:component>
```

5. Save the file.
6. View the component in a browser by navigating to `http://localhost:8080/helloWorld/hello.cmp`. If the component is not displayed, make sure that the web server is running.

Step 2: Add the Component to the App

Now, we're going to add our new component to the app. In this case, the component is simple, but the intent is to demonstrate how you can create a component that is reusable in multiple apps.

1. Open `helloWorld.app` and replace its contents with:

```
<aura:application>

    <h1>My First Aura App</h1>
    <helloWorld:hello />

</aura:application>
```

2. Save the file.
3. View the app in a browser by navigating to `http://localhost:8080/helloWorld/helloWorld.app`.

You created an app and added a simple component using Eclipse. Aura enables you to use JavaScript on the client and Java on the server to create rich applications, as you'll see in later topics.

SEE ALSO:

[aura:application](#)
[Component Body](#)

Next Steps

Now that you've created your first app, you might be wondering where do I go from here? There is much more to learn about Aura. Here are a few ideas for next steps.

- [Look at the Aura source code and build it from source in Eclipse](#)
- [Explore the capabilities of the Aura framework through the Aura Note sample app.](#)
- [Browse components that come out-of-the-box with Aura.](#)

Build Aura from Source

You don't have to build Aura from source to use it. However, if you want to customize the source code or submit a pull request with enhancements to the framework, here's how to do it. Before you begin, make sure you have this software installed:

1. [JDK 1.7](#)
2. [Apache Maven 3](#)

Step 1: Install git

The Aura source code is available on GitHub. To download the source code, you need an account on GitHub and the `git` command-line tool.

1. Create a GitHub account at <https://github.com/signup/free>.
2. Follow the instructions at <https://help.github.com/articles/set-up-git> to install and configure `git` and `ssh` keys.

You don't have to create your own repository. You'll be cloning the Aura source next.

Step 2: Get and Build Aura Source

1. On the command line, navigate to the directory where you want to keep the Aura source code.
2. Run the following commands to clone the source with `git` and build it with Maven:

```
git clone git@github.com:forcedotcom/aura.git
cd aura
mvn install
```

You should see a message that the build completed successfully.

Step 3: Import Aura Source into Eclipse

You can use your IDE of choice. These instructions show you how to import the Aura source into Eclipse.

1. Install [Eclipse 3.7 or later](#) and the [m2eclipse plugin](#). Choose the Eclipse distribution for Java EE Developers. This includes JavaScript editing and other Web UI tools..
2. Import the Aura source by clicking **File > Import > Maven > Existing Maven Projects**.
3. Click **Next**.
4. In the **Root Directory** field, browse to the directory that you cloned.
5. Click **Next**.
6. Click **Finish**.

You should see the source in the Package Explorer.

Step 4: Run Aura from Eclipse

To run Aura's Jetty server from Eclipse:

1. Click **Window > Preferences > Maven > Installations > Add...**
2. Navigate to your Maven installation and select it.
3. Click **Run > Debug Configurations...**
4. Right click **Maven Build** and select **New**.
5. Enter `Aura Jetty` in the **Name** field.
6. In the **Base directory** field, click **Browse Workspace...**
7. Select `aura-jetty` and click **OK**.
8. Enter `jetty:run` in the **Goals** field.
9. Click **ApplyApply**.
10. Click **Debug**.

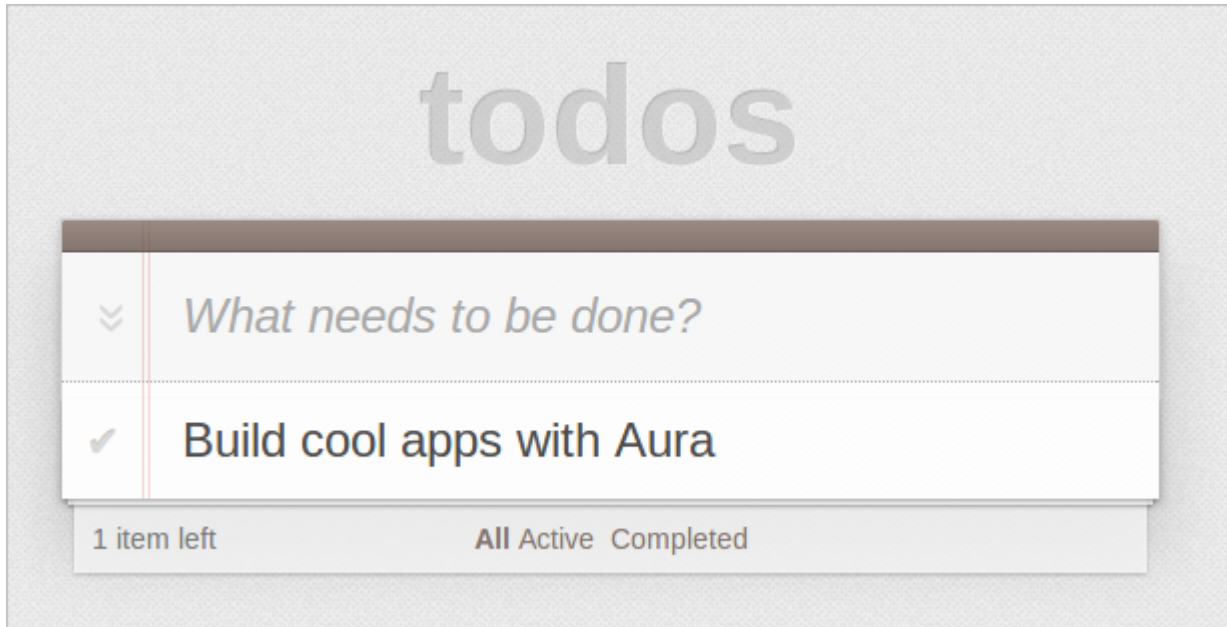
In the Console window, you should see a message that the Jetty server started. In a browser, navigate to `http://localhost:9090/` to access the server.

Aura Demos

TodoMVC

The TodoMVC app demonstrates the core concepts of the Aura framework.

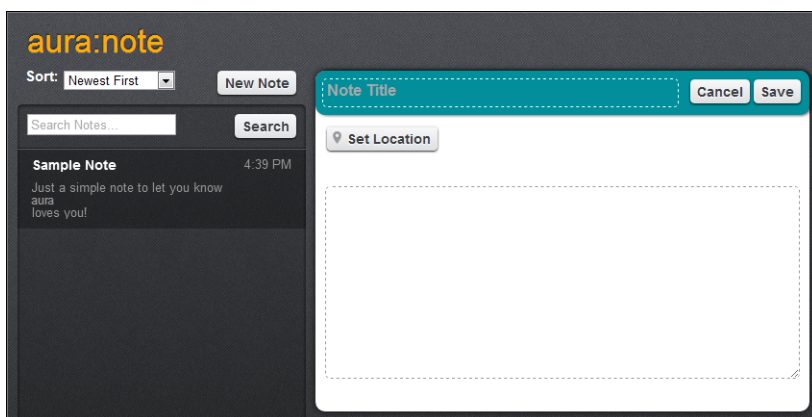
[Get the source](#)



Aura Note

Aura Note is a note-taking app showcasing the simplicity of building apps on Aura.

[Get the source](#)



CREATING COMPONENTS

CHAPTER 3 Components

In this chapter ...

- [Component Markup](#)
- [Component Namespace](#)
- [Viewing Components](#)
- [Component Bundles](#)
- [Component IDs](#)
- [HTML in Components](#)
- [CSS in Components](#)
- [Component Attributes](#)
- [Component Composition](#)
- [Component Body](#)
- [Component Facets](#)
- [Best Practices for Conditional Markup](#)
- [Lazy Loading](#)
- [Localization](#)
- [Adding Components to Apps](#)
- [Providing Component Documentation](#)

Components are the functional units of Aura.

A component encapsulates a modular and potentially reusable section of UI, and can range in granularity from a single line of text to an entire application.

Component Markup

Component files contain markup and have a `.cmp` suffix. The markup can contain text or references to other components, and also declares metadata about the component.

Let's start with a simple "Hello, world!" example in a `helloWorld.cmp` component.

```
<aura:component>
    Hello, world!
</aura:component>
```

This is about as simple as a component can get. The "Hello, world!" text is wrapped in the `<aura:component>` tags, which appear at the beginning and end of every component definition.

Components can contain most HTML tags so you can use markup, such as `<div>` and ``. HTML5 tags are also supported.

```
<aura:component>
    <div class="container">
        <!--Other HTML tags or components here-->
    </div>
</aura:component>
```



Note: Case sensitivity should be respected as your markup interacts with JavaScript, CSS, and Java.

Support Level

Each component has a support level ranging from fully supported (GA) to new and experimental (PROTO). The support level is defined in the `support` system attribute in the `<aura:component>` tag. For more information, see the [Reference tab](#).

`aura:component` has the following optional attributes.

Attribute	Type	Description
<code>abstract</code>	Boolean	Set to <code>true</code> if the component is abstract, or <code>false</code> otherwise.
<code>access</code>	String	Indicates whether the component can be used outside of its own namespace. Possible values are <code>internal</code> (default), <code>public</code> , and <code>global</code> .
<code>controller</code>	String	The server-side controller class for the component. The format is <code>java://<package.class></code> .
<code>description</code>	String	A description of the component.
<code>extends</code>	Component	The component to be extended, if applicable. For example, <code>extends="ui:input"</code> .
<code>extensible</code>	Boolean	Set to <code>true</code> if the component can be extended, or <code>false</code> otherwise.
<code>implements</code>	String	A comma-separated list of interfaces that the component implements.
<code>model</code>	String	The model class used to initialize data for the component. The format is <code>java://<package.class></code> .

Attribute	Type	Description
<code>render</code>	String	<p>Renders the component using client-side or server-side renderers. If not provided, the framework determines any dependencies and whether the component should be rendered client- or server-side.</p> <p>Valid options are <code>client</code> or <code>server</code>. The default is <code>auto</code>.</p> <p>Specify this attribute in the top-level component. For example, specify <code>render="client"</code> if you want to inspect the component on the client-side during testing.</p>
<code>support</code>	String	<p>The support level for the component. Valid options are <code>PROTO</code>, <code>DEPRECATED</code>, <code>BETA</code>, or <code>GA</code>.</p>

SEE ALSO:

[Component Access Control](#)
[Client-Side Rendering to the DOM](#)
[Dynamically Creating Components](#)

Component Namespace

Every component is part of a namespace, which is used to group related components together.

Another component or application can reference a component by adding `<myNamespace:myComponent>` in its markup. For example, the `helloWorld` component is in the `docsample` namespace. Another component can reference it by adding `<docsample:helloWorld />` in its markup.

Note where this component file is stored in the filesystem:

```
aura-components/components/docsample/helloWorld/helloWorld.cmp
```

All core components are in the `aura-components/components` directory. All folders within that directory map to a namespace.

Each folder within a namespace folder maps to a specific component and contains all the resources necessary for the component. We refer to this folder as the component's bundle.

In this case, the `helloWorld` bundle only contains a `helloWorld.cmp` file, which has the markup for this component. See [Component Bundles](#) for more information on files you can include in the bundle.

Viewing Components

How do we view a component in a Web browser?

In `DEV` mode, you can address any component using the URL scheme

```
http://<myServer>/<namespace>/<component>.cmp
```

1. Start the Jetty server on port 8080.

```
mvn jetty:run
```

To use another port, append `-Djetty.port=portNumber`. For example:

```
mvn jetty:run -Djetty.port=9877
```

2. Create a component in `aura-components/components/docsample/helloWorld/helloWorld.cmp`. Add this markup to the component.

```
<!--docsample:helloWorld-->
<aura:component>
    Hello, world!
</aura:component>
```

3. View your component in a browser by navigating to:
`http://localhost:8080/helloWorld/helloWorld.cmp`
 You should see a simple greeting in your browser.
4. To stop the Jetty server and free up the port when you are finished, press `CTRL+C` on the command line.

Component Bundles

A component bundle contains a component or an app and all its related files.

File	File Name	Usage	See Also
Component or Application	<code>sample.cmp</code> or <code>sample.app</code>	The only required resource in a bundle. Contains markup for the component or app. Each bundle contains only one component or app resource.	Components on page 11 aura:application on page 234
CSS Styles	<code>sample.css</code>	Styles for the component.	CSS in Components on page 16
Controller	<code>sampleController.js</code>	Client-side controller methods to handle events in the component.	Handling Events with Client-Side Controllers on page 90
Documentation	<code>sample.auradoc</code>	A description, sample code, and one or multiple references to example components	Providing Component Documentation on page 26
Model	<code>sampleModel.js</code>	JSON model to initialize a component.	JSON Models on page 148
Renderer	<code>sampleRenderer.js</code>	Client-side renderer to override default rendering for a component.	Client-Side Rendering to the DOM on page 125
Helper	<code>sampleHelper.js</code>	Helper methods that are shared by the controller and renderer.	Sharing JavaScript Code in a Component Bundle on page 123
Provider	<code>sampleProvider.js</code>	Client-side provider that returns the concrete component to use at runtime.	Client-Side Runtime Binding of Components on page 128
Test Cases	<code>sampleTest.js</code>	Contains a test suite to be run in the browser.	Testing Components on page 191

All resources in the component bundle follow the naming convention and are auto-wired. For example, a controller `<componentName>Controller.js` is auto-wired to its component, which means that you can use the controller within the scope of that component.

Component IDs

A component has two types of IDs: a local ID and a global ID.

Local IDs

A local ID is unique within a component and is only scoped to the component.

Create a local ID by using the `aura:id` attribute. For example:

```
<ui:button aura:id="button1" label="button1"/>
```

Find the button component by calling `cmp.find("button1")` in your client-side controller, where `cmp` is a reference to the component containing the button.

`aura:id` doesn't support expressions. You can only assign literal string values to `aura:id`.

Global IDs

Every component has a unique `globalId`, which is the generated runtime-unique ID of the component instance. A global ID is not guaranteed to be the same beyond the lifetime of a component, so it should never be relied on.

To create a unique ID for an HTML element, you can use the `globalId` as a prefix or suffix for your element. For example:


```
<div id="{!globalId + '_footer'}"></div>
```

You can use the `getGlobalId()` function in JavaScript to get a component's global ID.

```
var globalId = cmp.getGlobalId();
```

You can also do the reverse operation and get a component if you have its global ID.

```
var comp = $A.getComp(globalId);
```

 **Note:** For more information, see the [JavaScript API](#).

SEE ALSO:

[Finding Components by ID](#)

HTML in Components

An HTML tag is treated as a first-class component by the framework. Each HTML tag is translated into a component, allowing it to enjoy the same rights and privileges as any other component.

You can add HTML markup in components. Note that you must use strict [XHTML](#). For example, use `
` instead of `
`. You can also use HTML attributes and DOM events, such as `onclick`.



Warning: Some tags, like `<applet>` and ``, aren't supported. For a full list of unsupported tags, see [Supported HTML Tags](#) on page 252.

Unescaping HTML

To output pre-formatted HTML, use `aura:unescapedHTML`. For example, this is useful if you want to display HTML that is generated on the server and add it to the DOM. You must escape any HTML if necessary or your app might be exposed to security vulnerabilities.

You can pass in values from an expression, such as in `<aura:unescapedHtml value="{!v.note.body}" />`.

`{! expression}` is the framework's expression syntax. For more information, see [Expressions](#) on page 29.

SEE ALSO:

[Supported HTML Tags](#)

[CSS in Components](#)

CSS in Components

Style your components with CSS.

To add CSS to a component, add a new file to the component bundle called `<componentName>.css`. The framework automatically picks up this new file and auto-wires it when the component is used in a page.

For external CSS resources, see [Styling Apps](#) on page 115.

All top-level elements in a component have a special `THIS` CSS class added to them. This, effectively, adds namespacing to CSS and helps prevent one component's CSS from blowing away another component's styling. The framework throws an error if a CSS file doesn't follow this convention.

Let's look at a sample `helloHTML.cmp` component. The CSS is in `helloHTML.css`.

Component source

```
<aura:component>
  <div class="white">
    Hello, HTML!
  </div>

  <h2>Check out the style in this list.</h2>

  <ul>
    <li class="red">I'm red.</li>
    <li class="blue">I'm blue.</li>
    <li class="green">I'm green.</li>
  </ul>
</aura:component>
```

CSS source

```
.THIS {
  background-color: grey;
}
```

```
.THIS.white {
    background-color: white;
}

.THIS .red {
    background-color: red;
}

.THIS .blue {
    background-color: blue;
}

.THIS .green {
    background-color: green;
}
```

Output



The top-level elements match the `.THIS` class and render with a grey background.

The `<div class="white">` element matches the `.THIS.white` selector and renders with a white background. Note that there is no space in the selector as this rule is for top-level elements.

The `<li class="red">` element matches the `.THIS .red` selector and renders with a red background. Note that this is a descendant selector and it contains a space as the `` element is not a top-level element.

SEE ALSO:

[Adding and Removing Styles](#)

[HTML in Components](#)

Component Attributes

Component attributes are like member variables on a class in Java. They are typed fields that are set on a specific instance of a component, and can be referenced from within the component's markup using an expression syntax. Attributes enable you to make components more dynamic.

Use the `<aura:attribute>` tag to add an attribute to the component or app. Let's look at the following sample, `helloAttributes.app`:


```
<aura:application>
    <aura:attribute name="whom" type="String" default="world"/>
    Hello {!v.whom}!
</aura:application>
```

All attributes have a name and a type. Attributes may be marked as required by specifying `required="true"`, and may also specify a default value.

In this case we've got an attribute named `whom` of type `String`. If no value is specified, it defaults to `"world"`.

Though not a strict requirement, `<aura:attribute>` tags are usually the first things listed in a component's markup, as it provides an easy way to read the component's shape at a glance.

Attribute names must start with a letter or underscore. They can also contain numbers or hyphens after the first character.

 **Note:** You can't use attributes with hyphens in expressions. For example, `cmp.get("v.name-withHyphen")` is supported, but not `<ui:button label="{!v.name-withHyphen}" />`.


Now, append `?whom=you` to the URL and reload the page. The value in the query string sets the value of the `whom` attribute. Supplying attribute values via the query string when requesting a component is one way to set the attributes on that component.

 **Warning:** This only works for attributes of type `String`.

Expressions

`helloAttributes.app` contains an expression, `{!v.whom}`, which is responsible for the component's dynamic output.

`{! expression}` is the framework's expression syntax. In this case, the expression we are evaluating is `v.whom`. The name of the attribute we defined is `whom`, while `v` is the value provider for a component's attribute set, which represents the view.

 **Note:** Expressions are case sensitive. For example, if you have a custom field `myNamespace__Amount__c`, you must refer to it as `{!v.myObject.myNamespace__Amount__c}`.

Attribute Validation

We defined the set of valid attributes in `helloAttributes.app`, so the framework automatically validates that only valid attributes are passed to that component.

Try requesting `helloAttributes.app` with the query string `?fakeAttribute=fakeValue`. You should receive an error that `helloAttributes.app` doesn't have a `fakeAttribute` attribute.

SEE ALSO:

[Supported aura:attribute Types](#)

[Expressions](#)

Component Composition

Composing fine-grained components in a larger component enables you to build more interesting components and applications.

Let's see how we can fit components together. We will first create a few simple components: `docsample:helloHTML` and `docsample:helloAttributes`. Then, we'll create a wrapper component, `docsample:nestedComponents`, that contains the simple components.

Here is the source for `helloHTML.cmp`.

```
<!--docsample:helloHTML-->
<aura:component>
  <div class="white">
    Hello, HTML!
  </div>

  <h2>Check out the style in this list.</h2>
```

```

    <ul>
      <li class="red">I'm red.</li>
      <li class="blue">I'm blue.</li>
      <li class="green">I'm green.</li>
    </ul>
  </aura:component>

```

CSS source

```

.THIS {
    background-color: grey;
}

.THIS.white {
    background-color: white;
}

.THIS .red {
    background-color: red;
}

.THIS .blue {
    background-color: blue;
}

.THIS .green {
    background-color: green;
}

```

Output

Hello, HTML!
Check out the style in this list.

- I'm red.
- I'm blue.
- I'm green.

Here is the source for `helloAttributes.cmp`.

```

<!--docsample:helloAttributes-->
<aura:component>
    <aura:attribute name="whom" type="String" default="world"/>
    Hello {!v.whom}!
</aura:component>

```

`nestedComponents.cmp` uses composition to include other components in its markup.

```

<!--docsample:nestedComponents-->
<aura:component>
    Observe!  Components within components!

    <docsample:helloHTML/>

    <docsample:helloAttributes whom="component composition"/>
</aura:component>

```

Output

```
Observe! Components within components!
Hello, HTML!
Check out the style in this list
```

- I'm red
- I'm blue
- I'm green

```
Hello component composition!
```

Including an existing component is similar to including an HTML tag. Reference the component by its "descriptor", which is of the form `namespace:component`. `nestedComponents.cmp` references the `helloHTML.cmp` component, which lives in the `docsample` namespace. Hence, its descriptor is `docsample:helloHTML`.

Note how `nestedComponents.cmp` also references `docsample:helloAttributes`. Just like adding attributes to an HTML tag, you can set attribute values in a component as part of the component tag. `nestedComponents.cmp` sets the `whom` attribute of `helloAttributes.cmp` to "component composition".

Attribute Passing

You can also pass attributes to nested components. `nestedComponents2.cmp` is similar to `nestedComponents.cmp`, except that it includes an extra `passthrough` attribute. This value is passed through as the attribute value for `docsample:helloAttributes`.

```
<!--docsample:nestedComponents2-->
<aura:component>
  <aura:attribute name="passthrough" type="String" default="passed attribute"/>
  Observe!  Components within components!

  <docsample:helloHTML/>

  <docsample:helloAttributes whom="{#v.passthrough}"/>
</aura:component>
```

Output

```
Observe! Components within components!
Hello, HTML!
Check out the style in this list
```

- I'm red
- I'm blue
- I'm green

```
Hello passed attribute!
```

`helloAttributes` is now using the passed through attribute value.



Note: `{#v.passthrough}` is an unbound expression. This means that any change to the value of the `whom` attribute in `docsample:helloAttributes` doesn't propagate back to affect the value of the `passthrough` attribute in `docsample:nestedComponents2`. For more information, see [Data Binding in Expressions](#) on page 31.

Definitions versus Instances

In object-oriented programming, there's a difference between a class and an instance of that class. Components have a similar concept. When you create a `.cmp` file, you are providing the definition (class) of that component. When you put a component tag in a `.cmp` file, you are creating a reference to (instance of) that component.

It shouldn't be surprising that we can add multiple instances of the same component with different attributes.

`nestedComponents3.cmp` adds another instance of `docsample:helloAttributes` with a different attribute value. The two instances of the `docsample:helloAttributes` component have different values for their `whom` attribute.

```
<!--docsample:nestedComponents3-->
<aura:component>
    <aura:attribute name="passthrough" type="String" default="passed attribute"/>
    Observe!  Components within components!

    <docsample:helloHTML/>

    <docsample:helloAttributes whom="{#v.passthrough}"/>

    <docsample:helloAttributes whom="separate instance"/>
</aura:component>
```

Output

Observe! Components within components!
Hello, HTML!
Check out the style in this list.

- I'm red.
- I'm blue.
- I'm green.

Hello passed attribute! Hello separate instance!

Component Body

The root-level tag of every component is `<aura:component>`. Every component inherits the `body` attribute from `<aura:component>`.

The `<aura:component>` tag can contain tags, such as `<aura:attribute>`, `<aura:registerEvent>`, `<aura:handler>`, `<aura:set>`, and so on. Any free markup that is not enclosed in one of the tags allowed in a component is assumed to be part of the body and is set in the `body` attribute.

The `body` attribute has type `Aura.Component[]`. It can be an array of one component, or an empty array, but it's always an array.

In a component, use `"v"` to access the collection of attributes. For example, `{!v.body}` outputs the body of the component.

Setting the Body Content

To set the `body` attribute in a component, add free markup within the `<aura:component>` tag. For example:

```
<aura:component>
    <!--START BODY-->
    <div>Body part</div>
    <ui:button label="Push Me"/>
    <!--END BODY-->
</aura:component>
```

To set the value of an inherited attribute, use the `<aura:set>` tag. Setting the body content is equivalent to wrapping that free markup inside `<aura:set attribute="body">`. Since the `body` attribute has this special behavior, you can omit `<aura:set attribute="body">`.

The previous sample is a shortcut for this markup. We recommend the less verbose syntax in the previous sample.

```
<aura:component>
  <aura:set attribute="body">
    <!--START BODY-->
    <div>Body part</div>
    <ui:button label="Push Me"/>
    <!--END BODY-->
  </aura:set>
</aura:component>
```

The same logic applies when you use any component that has a `body` attribute, not just `<aura:component>`. For example:

```
<ui:panel>
  Hello world!
</ui:panel>
```

This is a shortcut for:

```
<ui:panel>
  <aura:set attribute="body">
    Hello World!
  </aura:set>
</ui:panel>
```

Accessing the Component Body

To access a component body in JavaScript, use `component.get("v.body")`.

SEE ALSO:

[aura:set](#)

[Working with a Component Body in JavaScript](#)

Component Facets

A facet is any attribute of type `Aura.Component[]`. The `body` attribute is an example of a facet.

To define your own facet, add an `aura:attribute` tag of type `Aura.Component[]` to your component. For example, let's create a new component called `facetHeader.cmp`.

Component source

```
<aura:component>
  <aura:attribute name="header" type="Aura.Component[]" />

  <div>
    <span class="header">{!v.header}</span><br/>
    <span class="body">{!v.body}</span>
  </div>
</aura:component>
```

This component has a header facet. Note how we position the output of the header using the `v.header` expression.

The component doesn't have any output when you access it directly as the `header` and `body` attributes aren't set. The following component, `helloFacets.cmp`, sets these attributes.

Component source

```
<aura:component>
  See how we set the header facet.<br/>

  <auradocs:facetHeader>

    Nice body!

    <aura:set attribute="header">
      Hello Header!
    </aura:set>
  </auradocs:facetHeader>

</aura:component>
```

Note that `aura:set` sets the value of an attribute inherited from the super component, but you don't need to use `aura:set` if you're setting the value of `v.body`.

SEE ALSO:
[Component Body](#)

Best Practices for Conditional Markup

Use the `<aura:if>` or `<aura:renderIf>` tags to conditionally display markup. Alternatively, you can conditionally set markup in JavaScript logic. Consider the performance cost as well as code maintainability when you design components. The best design choice depends on your use case.

<aura:if> VERSUS <aura:renderIf>

`<aura:if>` is more lightweight than `<aura:renderIf>` as it only creates and renders the markup in its body or in the `else` attribute. Always try `<aura:if>` first when you want conditional markup.

Only consider using `<aura:renderIf>` if you expect to show the markup for both the true and false states, and it would require a server round trip to create the components that aren't initially rendered.

Here's a quick comparison of `<aura:if>` versus `<aura:renderIf>`.

	<aura:if>	<aura:renderIf>
Displaying	Creates and displays only one branch	Creates both branches but only displays one
Switching condition	Unrenders and destroys the current branch. Creates and displays the other branch.	Unrenders the current branch and renders the other branch
Empty branch	Creates a DOM placeholder	Creates a DOM placeholder

Consider Alternatives to Conditional Markup

Here are some use cases where you should consider alternatives to `<aura:if>` or `<aura:renderIf>`.

You want to toggle visibility

Don't use `<aura:if>` or `<aura:renderIf>` tags to toggle markup visibility. Use CSS instead. See [Dynamically Showing or Hiding Markup](#) on page 142.

You need to nest conditional logic or use conditional logic in an iteration

Using `<aura:if>` or `<aura:renderIf>` tags can hurt performance by creating a large number of components. Excessive use of conditional logic in markup can also lead to cluttered markup that is harder to maintain.

Consider alternatives:

- Use JavaScript logic in an `init` event handler instead. See [Invoking Actions on Component Initialization](#) on page 137.
- Use a provider to determine the concrete component to use at runtime. This can reduce conditional markup and result in cleaner, more maintainable components. See [Server-Side Runtime Binding of Components](#) on page 164.

SEE ALSO:

[aura:if](#)

[aura:renderIf](#)

[Conditional Expressions](#)

Lazy Loading

Lazy loading a component can improve the apparent response time of your app if you have many components that users don't need all at once.

A lazily loaded component is rendered after its parent component is loaded. When a component is lazily loaded, the app renders a placeholder spinner component, `aura:placeholder`. The framework makes an asynchronous request and replaces the placeholder component once the request returns the component.

To enable lazy loading on a component, add the `aura:load="lazy"` attribute to your component tag.



Note: When you enable lazy loading on a component, you can't pass a body or other non-primitive attribute values into the component.

Loading a Component Exclusively

To load the component in its own request, add the `aura:load="exclusive"` attribute to your component tag. This is similar to lazy loading except that the request to get the component won't be grouped with any other actions or the retrieval of other lazy-loaded components. The component will have its own request so that it doesn't block the loading of anything else.

SEE ALSO:

[Supported aura:attribute Types](#)

Localization

The framework provides client-side localization support on input and output components.

The components retrieve the browser's locale information and display the date and time accordingly. The following example shows how you can override the default `langLocale` and `timezone` attributes. The output displays the time in the format `hh:mm` by default.

Component source

```
<aura:component>
    <ui:outputDateTime value="2013-05-07T00:17:08.997Z" timezone="Europe/Berlin"
    langLocale="de"/>
</aura:component>
```

The component renders as `Mai 7, 2013 2:17:08 AM`.

Additionally, you can use the global value provider, `$Locale`, to obtain a browser's locale information. By default, the framework uses the browser's locale, but it can be configured to use others through the global value provider.

Using the Localization Service

The framework's localization service enables you to manage the localization of date, time, numbers, and currencies.

This example sets the formatted date time using `$Locale` and the localization service.

```
var dateFormat = $A.get("$Locale.dateFormat");
var dateString = $A.localizationService.formatDateTime(new Date(), dateFormat);
```

If you're not retrieving the browser's date information, you can specify the date format on your own. This example specifies the date format and uses the browser's language locale information.

```
var dateFormat = "MMMM d, yyyy h:mm a";
var userLocaleLang = $A.get("$Locale.langLocale");
return $A.localizationService.formatDate(date, dateFormat, userLocaleLang);
```

This example compares two dates to check that one is later than the other.

```
if( $A.localizationService.isAfter(StartDateTime,EndDateTime)) {
    //throw an error if StartDateTime is after EndDateTime
}
```

SEE ALSO:

[Global Value Providers](#)

Adding Components to Apps

When you're ready to add components to your app, you should first look at the out-of-the-box components that come with the framework. You can also leverage these components by extending them or using composition to add them to custom components that you're building.



Note: See the `Components` folder in the [Reference](#) tab for all the out-of-the-box components. The `ui` namespace includes many components that are common on Web pages.

Components are encapsulated and their internals stay private, while their public shape is visible to consumers of the component. This strong separation gives component authors freedom to change the internal implementation details and insulates component consumers from those changes.

The public shape of a component is defined by the attributes that can be set and the events that interact with the component. The shape is essentially the API for developers to interact with the component. To design a new component, think about the attributes that you want to expose and the events that the component should initiate or respond to.

Once you have defined the shape of any new components, developers can work on the components in parallel. This is a useful approach if you have a team working on an app.

SEE ALSO:

[Component Composition](#)

[Using Object-Oriented Development](#)

[Component Attributes](#)

[Events](#)

Providing Component Documentation

Component documentation helps others understand and use your components.

You can provide two types of component reference documentation:

- Documentation definition (DocDef): Full documentation on a component, including a description, sample code, and a reference to an example. DocDef supports extensive HTML markup and is useful for describing what a component is and what it does.
- Inline descriptions: Text-only descriptions, typically one or two sentences, set via the `description` attribute in a tag.

To provide a DocDef, create a `.auradoc` file in the component bundle and use the `<aura:documentation>` tag to wrap your documentation. The following example shows the documentation definition (DocDef) for the `ui:button` component.



Note: DocDef is currently supported for components and applications. Events and interfaces support inline descriptions only.

```
<aura:documentation>
  <aura:description>
    <p>
      A <code>ui:button</code> component represents a button element that executes an action
      defined by a controller.
      Clicking the button triggers the client-side controller method set for the
      <code>press</code> event.
      The button can be created in several ways.
    </p>
    <p>
      A text-only button has only the required <code>label</code> attribute set on it.
      To create a button with both image and text, use the <code>label</code> attribute and
      add styles for the button.
    </p>
    <p>The visual appearance of buttons is highly configurable, as are text and accessibility
      attributes.</p>

    <!--More markup here, such as <pre> for code samples-->
    <p>The markup for a button with text and image results in the following HTML. </p>

    <pre>
      <button class="default uiBlock uiButton" accesskey type="button">
        
        <span class="label bBody truncate" dir="ltr">Find</span>
```

```

        </button>
    </pre>

</aura:description>
<aura:example name="buttonExample" ref="uiExamples:buttonExample" label="Using ui:button">

    <p>This example shows a button that displays the input value you enter.</p>
</aura:example>
<aura:example name="buttonSecondExample" ref="uiExamples:buttonSecondExample"
label="Customizing ui:button">
    <p>This example shows a customized <code>ui:button</code> component.</p>
</aura:example>
</aura:documentation>

```

A documentation definition contains these tags.

Tag	Description
<code><aura:documentation></code>	The top-level definition of the DocDef
<code><aura:description></code>	Describes the component using extensive HTML markup. To include code samples in the description, use the <code><pre></code> tag, which renders as a code block. Code entered in the <code><pre></code> tag must be escaped. For example, escape <code><aura:component></code> by entering <code>&lt;aura:component&gt;</code> .
<code><aura:example></code>	References an example that demonstrates how the component is used. Supports extensive HTML markup, which displays as text preceding the visual output and example component source. The example is displayed as interactive output. Multiple examples are supported and should be wrapped in individual <code><aura:example></code> tags. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <code>name</code>: The API name of the example • <code>ref</code>: The reference to the example component in the format <code><namespace:exampleComponent></code> • <code>label</code>: The label of the title

Providing an Example Component

Recall that the DocDef includes a reference to an example component. The example component is rendered as an interactive demo in the component reference documentation when it's wired up using `aura:example`.

```
<aura:example name="buttonExample" ref="uiExamples:buttonExample" label="Using ui:button">
```

The following is an example component that demonstrates how `ui:button` can be used.

```

<!--The uiExamples:buttonExample example component -->
<aura:component>
    <ui:inputText aura:id="name" label="Enter Name:" placeholder="Your Name" />
    <ui:button aura:id="button" buttonText="Click to see what you put into the field"
        class="button" label="Click me" press="{!c.getInput}" />
    <ui:outputText aura:id="outName" value="" class="text" />
</aura:component>

```

Providing Inline Descriptions

Inline descriptions provide a brief overview of what an element is about. HTML markup is not supported in inline descriptions. These tags support inline descriptions via the `description` attribute.

Tag	Example
<code><aura:component></code>	<code><aura:component description="Represents a button element"></code>
<code><aura:attribute></code>	<code><aura:attribute name="langLocale" type="String" description="The language locale used to format date value."/></code>
<code><aura:event></code>	<code><aura:event type="COMPONENT" description="Indicates that a keyboard key has been pressed and released"/></code>
<code><aura:interface></code>	<code><aura:interface description="A common interface for date components"/></code>
<code><aura:registerEvent></code>	<code><aura:registerEvent name="keydown" type="ui:keydown" description="Indicates that a key is pressed"/></code>

SEE ALSO:

[Reference Overview](#)

CHAPTER 4 Expressions

In this chapter ...

- [Dynamic Output in Expressions](#)
- [Conditional Expressions](#)
- [Data Binding in Expressions](#)
- [Value Providers](#)
- [Expression Evaluation](#)
- [Expression Operators Reference](#)
- [Expression Functions Reference](#)

Expressions allow you to make calculations and access property values and other data within component markup. Use expressions for dynamic output or passing values into components by assigning them to attributes.

An expression is any set of literal values, variables, sub-expressions, or operators that can be resolved to a single value. Method calls are not allowed in expressions.

The expression syntax is: `{ ! expression }`

expression is a placeholder for the expression.

Anything inside the `{ ! }` delimiters is evaluated and dynamically replaced when the component is rendered or when the value is used by the component. Whitespace is ignored.

The resulting value can be a primitive, such as an integer, string, or boolean. It can also be a JavaScript object, a component or collection, a controller method such as an action method, and other useful results.



Note: If you're familiar with other languages, you may be tempted to read the `!` as the "bang" operator, which negates boolean values in many programming languages. In Aura, `{ ! }` is simply the delimiter used to begin an expression.

Identifiers in an expression, such as attribute names accessed through the view, controller values, or labels, must start with a letter or underscore. They can also contain numbers or hyphens after the first character. For example, `{ !v.2count }` is not valid, but `{ !v.count }` is.



Important: Only use the `{ ! }` syntax in markup in `.app` or `.cmp` files. In JavaScript, use string syntax to evaluate an expression. For example:

```
var theLabel = cmp.get("v.label");
```

If you want to escape `{ ! }`, use this syntax:

```
<aura:text value="{!}"/>
```

This renders `{ ! }` in plain text because the `aura:text` component never interprets `{ ! }` as the start of an expression.

Dynamic Output in Expressions

The simplest way to use expressions is to output dynamic values.

Values used in the expression can be from component attributes, literal values, booleans, and so on. For example:

```
{!v.desc}
```

In this expression, `v` represents the view, which is the set of component attributes, and `desc` is an attribute of the component. The expression is simply outputting the `desc` attribute value for the component that contains this markup.

If you're including literal values in expressions, enclose text values within single quotes, such as `{!'Some text'}`.

Include numbers without quotes, for example, `{!123}`.

For booleans, use `{!true}` for `true` and `{!false}` for `false`.

SEE ALSO:

[Component Attributes](#)

[Value Providers](#)

Conditional Expressions

Here are examples of conditional expressions using the ternary operator and the `<aura:if>` tag.

Ternary Operator

This expression uses the ternary operator to conditionally output one of two values dependent on a condition.

```
<a class="{!v.location == '/active' ? 'selected' : ''}" href="#/active">Active</a>
```

The `{!v.location == '/active' ? 'selected' : ''}` expression conditionally sets the `class` attribute of an HTML `<a>` tag, by checking whether the `location` attribute is set to `/active`. If true, the expression sets `class` to `selected`.

Using `<aura:if>` for Conditional Markup

This snippet of markup uses the `<aura:if>` tag to conditionally display an edit button.

```
<aura:attribute name="edit" type="Boolean" default="true">
<aura:if isTrue="{!v.edit}">
  <ui:button label="Edit"/>
<aura:set attribute="else">
  You can't edit this.
</aura:set>
</aura:if>
```

If the `edit` attribute is set to `true`, a `ui:button` displays. Otherwise, the text in the `else` attribute displays.

SEE ALSO:

[Best Practices for Conditional Markup](#)

[aura:if](#)

Data Binding in Expressions

There are two forms of expression syntax. The two forms exhibit different behaviors for data binding and updates when you pass an expression from a parent component to a child component that it contains.

`{#expression}` (Unbound Expressions)

Data updates behave as you would expect in Javascript. Primitives, such as `String`, are passed by value, and data updates for the expression in the parent and child are decoupled.

Objects, such as `Array` or `Map`, are passed by reference so changes to the data in the child propagate to the parent. However, change handlers in the parent won't be notified, so it will not be rerendered. The same behavior applies for changes in the parent propagating to the child.

`{!expression}` (Bound Expressions)

Data updates in either component are reflected through bi-directional data binding in both components. Similarly, change notifications are triggered in both the parent and child components.



Tip: Bi-directional data binding is expensive for performance and it creates hard-to-debug errors due to the propagation of data changes. We recommend using the `{#expression}` syntax instead when you pass an expression from a parent component to a child component unless you require bi-directional data binding.

Unbound Expressions

Let's look at an example of a `docsample:parentBoundExpr` component that contains another component, `docsample:childBoundExpr`. The `parentBoundExpr` component uses an unbound expression to set an attribute in the `childBoundExpr` component.

This is the markup for `docsample:childBoundExpr`.

```
<!--docsample:childBoundExpr-->
<aura:component>
  <aura:attribute name="childAttr" type="String" />

  <p>childBoundExpr childAttr: {!v.childAttr}</p>
  <p><ui:button label="Update childAttr"
    press="{!c.updateChildAttr}" /></p>
</aura:component>
```

This is the markup for `docsample:parentBoundExpr`.

```
<!--docsample:parentBoundExpr-->
<aura:component>
  <aura:attribute name="parentAttr" type="String" default="parent attribute"/>

  <!-- Instantiate the child component -->
  <docsample:childBoundExpr childAttr="{#v.parentAttr}" />

  <p>parentBoundExpr parentAttr: {!v.parentAttr}</p>
  <p><ui:button label="Update parentAttr"
    press="{!c.updateParentAttr}" /></p>
</aura:component>
```

When we instantiate `childBoundExpr`, we set the `childAttr` attribute to the value of the `parentAttr` attribute in `parentBoundExpr`. Since the `{#v.parentAttr}` syntax is used, the `v.parentAttr` expression is not bound to the value of the `childAttr` attribute.

Navigate to `docsample:parentBoundExpr` and you'll see that both `parentAttr` and `childAttr` are set to "parent attribute", which is the default value of `parentAttr`.

Now, let's create a client-side controller for `docsample:childBoundExpr` so that we can dynamically update the component. Here is the source for `childBoundExprController.js`.

```
(( {
  updateChildAttr: function(cmp) {
    cmp.set("v.childAttr", "updated child attribute");
  }
}))
```

Navigate to `docsample:parentBoundExpr` again and press the **Update childAttr** button. This updates `childAttr` to "updated child attribute". The value of `parentAttr` is unchanged since we used an unbound expression.

```
<docsample:childBoundExpr childAttr="{#v.parentAttr}" />
```

Let's add a client-side controller for `docsample:parentBoundExpr`. Here is the source for `parentBoundExprController.js`.

```
(( {
  updateParentAttr: function(cmp) {
    cmp.set("v.parentAttr", "updated parent attribute");
  }
}))
```

Navigate to `docsample:parentBoundExpr` again and press the **Update parentAttr** button. This time, `parentAttr` is set to "updated parent attribute" while `childAttr` is unchanged due to the unbound expression.



Warning: Don't use a component's `init` event and client-side controller to initialize an attribute that is used in an unbound expression. The attribute will not be initialized. Use a bound expression instead. For more information on a component's `init` event, see [Invoking Actions on Component Initialization](#) on page 137.

Alternatively, you can wrap the component in another component. When you instantiate the wrapped component in the wrapper component, initialize the attribute value instead of initializing the attribute in the wrapped component's client-side controller.

Bound Expressions

Now, let's update the code to use a bound expression instead. Change this line in `docsample:parentBoundExpr`:

```
<docsample:childBoundExpr childAttr="{#v.parentAttr}" />
```

to:

```
<docsample:childBoundExpr childAttr="{!v.parentAttr}" />
```

Navigate to `docsample:parentBoundExpr` and press the **Update childAttr** button. This updates both `childAttr` and `parentAttr` to "updated child attribute" even though we only set `v.childAttr` in the client-side controller of `childBoundExpr`. Both attributes were updated since we used a bound expression to set the `childAttr` attribute.

SEE ALSO:

[Dynamic Output in Expressions](#)

[Component Composition](#)

Value Providers

Value providers are a way to access data. Value providers encapsulate related values together, similar to how an object encapsulates properties and methods.

The most common value providers are `m`, `v`, and `c` as in "model-view-controller".

Value Provider	Description
<code>m</code>	A component's model with data persisted on a back end service
<code>v</code>	A component's attribute set
<code>c</code>	A component's controller with actions and event handlers for the component

All components have a `v` value provider, but aren't required to have a controller or model. All three value providers are created automatically when defined for a component.

Values in a value provider are accessed as named properties. To use a value, separate the value provider and the property name with a dot (period). For example, `v.body`.



Note: Expressions are bound to the specific component that contains them. That component is also known as the attribute value provider, and is used to resolve any expressions that are passed to attributes of its contained components.

Accessing Fields and Related Objects

When an attribute of a component is an object or other structured data (not a primitive value), access the values on that attribute using the same dot notation.

For example, if a component has an attribute `note`, access a note value such as `title` using the `v.note.title` syntax. This example shows usage of this nested syntax for a few attributes.

```
<aura:component>
  <aura:attribute name="note" type="java://org.auraframework.demo.notes.Note"/>
  <ui:block>
    <aura:set attribute="right">
      <ui:outputDateTime value="{#v.note.createdOn}" format="h:mm a"/>
    </aura:set>
  </ui:block>
  {!v.note.title}
</aura:component>
```



Note: `{#v.note.createdOn}` is an unbound expression. This means that any change to the `value` attribute in `ui:outputDateTime` doesn't propagate back to affect the value of the `note` attribute in the parent component. For more information, see [Data Binding in Expressions](#) on page 31.

For deeply nested objects and attributes, continue adding dots to traverse the structure and access the nested values.

SEE ALSO:

[Dynamic Output in Expressions](#)

Global Value Providers

Global value providers are global values and methods that a component can use in expressions.

The global value providers are:

- `$Label`—See [\\$Label](#) on page 71.
- `globalID`—See [Component IDs](#) on page 15.
- `$Browser`—See [\\$Browser](#) on page 34.
- `$Locale`—See [\\$Locale](#) on page 35.

SEE ALSO:

[Adding Custom Global Value Providers](#)

\$Browser

The `$Browser` global value provider provides information about the hardware and operating system of the browser accessing the application.

Attribute	Description
<code>formFactor</code>	Returns a <code>FormFactor</code> enum value based on the type of hardware the browser is running on. <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <code>DESKTOP</code> for a desktop client• <code>PHONE</code> for a phone including a mobile phone with a browser and a smartphone• <code>TABLET</code> for a tablet client (for which <code>isTablet</code> returns <code>true</code>)
<code>isAndroid</code>	Indicates whether the browser is running on an Android device (<code>true</code>) or not (<code>false</code>).
<code>isIOS</code>	Not available in all implementations. Indicates whether the browser is running on an iOS device (<code>true</code>) or not (<code>false</code>).
<code>isIPad</code>	Not available in all implementations. Indicates whether the browser is running on an iPad (<code>true</code>) or not (<code>false</code>).
<code>isIPhone</code>	Not available in all implementations. Indicates whether the browser is running on an iPhone (<code>true</code>) or not (<code>false</code>).
<code>isPhone</code>	Indicates whether the browser is running on a phone including a mobile phone with a browser and a smartphone (<code>true</code>), or not (<code>false</code>).
<code>isTablet</code>	Indicates whether the browser is running on an iPad or a tablet with Android 2.2 or later (<code>true</code>) or not (<code>false</code>).
<code>isWindowsPhone</code>	Indicates whether the browser is running on a Windows phone (<code>true</code>) or not (<code>false</code>). Note that this only detects Windows phones and does not detect tablets or other touch-enabled Windows 8 devices.



Example: This example returns true or false depending on the operating system and device of the browser where you are rendering the component.

Component source

```
<aura:component>
    {!$Browser.isTablet}
    {!$Browser.isPhone}
    {!$Browser.isAndroid}
    {!$Browser.formFactor}
</aura:component>
```

Similarly, you can check browser information in a client-side controller using `$A.get()`.

```
((
    checkBrowser: function(component) {
        var device = $A.get("$Browser.formFactor");
        alert("You are using a " + device);
    }
}))
```

\$Locale

The `$Locale` global value provider returns information about the browser's locale.

These attributes are based on Java's `Locale` and `TimeZone` classes.

Attribute	Description	Sample Value
country	The ISO 3166 representation of the country code.	"US", "DE", "GB"
currency	The currency symbol.	"\$"
currencyCode	The ISO 4217 representation of the currency code.	"USD"
decimal	The decimal separator.	"."
grouping	The grouping separator.	","
language	The language code.	"en", "de", "zh"
langLocale	The locale ID.	"en_US", "en_GB"
timezone	The time zone ID.	"America/Los_Angeles", "America/New_York"
variant	The vendor and browser-specific code.	"WIN", "MAC", "POSIX"

Number and Date Formatting

The framework's number and date formatting are based on Java's `DecimalFormat` and `DateFormat` classes.

Attribute	Description	Sample Value
currencyformat	The currency format.	"¤#,##0.00;(¤#,##0.00)" ¤ represents the currency sign, which is replaced by the currency symbol.
dateFormat	The date format.	"MMM d, yyyy"
datetimeFormat	The date time format.	"MMM d, yyyy h:mm:ss a"
numberformat	The number format.	"#,##0.###" # represents a digit, the comma is a placeholder for the grouping separator, and the period is a placeholder for the decimal separator. Zero (0) replaces # to represent trailing zeros.
percentformat	The percentage format.	"#,##0%"
timeFormat	The time format.	"h:mm:ss a"



Example: This example shows how to retrieve different `$Locale` attributes.

Component source

```
<aura:component>
    {!$Locale.language}
    {!$Locale.timezone}
    {!$Locale.numberFormat}
    {!$Locale.currencyFormat}
</aura:component>
```

Similarly, you can check locale information in a client-side controller using `$A.get()`.

```
((
    checkDevice: function(component) {
        var locale = $A.get("$Locale.language");
        alert("You are using " + locale);
    }
}))
```

SEE ALSO:

[Localization](#)

Adding Custom Global Value Providers

Add a custom global value provider by implementing the `GlobalValueProviderAdapter` interface.

SEE ALSO:

[Global Value Providers](#)

[Overriding Default Adapters](#)

[Default Adapters](#)

Expression Evaluation

Expressions are evaluated much the same way that expressions in JavaScript or other programming languages are evaluated.

Operators are a subset of those available in JavaScript, and evaluation order and precedence are generally the same as JavaScript. Parentheses enable you to ensure a specific evaluation order. What you may find surprising about expressions is how often they are evaluated. The framework notices when things change, and trigger re-rendering of any components that are affected. Dependencies are handled automatically. This is one of the fundamental benefits of the framework. It knows when to re-render something on the page. When a component is re-rendered, any expressions it uses will be re-evaluated.

Action Methods

Expressions are also used to provide action methods for user interface events: `onclick`, `onhover`, and any other component attributes beginning with "on". Some components simplify assigning actions to user interface events using other attributes, such as the `press` attribute on `<ui:button>`.

Action methods must be assigned to attributes using an expression, for example `{!c.theAction}`. This assigns an `Aura.Action`, which is a reference to the controller function that handles the action.

Assigning action methods via expressions allows you to assign them conditionally, based on the state of the application or user interface. For more information, see [Conditional Expressions](#) on page 30.

```
<ui:button aura:id="likeBtn"
    label="{!(v.likeId == null) ? 'Like It' : 'Unlike It'}"
    press="{!(v.likeId == null) ? c.likeIt : c.unlikeIt}"
/>
```

This button will show "Like It" for items that have not yet been liked, and clicking it will call the `likeIt` action method. Then the component will re-render, and the opposite user interface display and method assignment will be in place. Clicking a second time will unlike the item, and so on.

Expression Operators Reference

The expression language supports operators to enable you to create more complex expressions.

Arithmetic Operators

Expressions based on arithmetic operators result in numerical values.

Operator	Usage	Description
+	1 + 1	Add two numbers.
-	2 - 1	Subtract one number from the other.
*	2 * 2	Multiply two numbers.
/	4 / 2	Divide one number by the other.
%	5 % 2	Return the integer remainder of dividing the first number by the second.
-	-v.exp	Unary operator. Reverses the sign of the succeeding number. For example if the value of <code>expenses</code> is 100, then <code>-expenses</code> is -100.

Numeric Literals

Literal	Usage	Description
Integer	2	Integers are numbers without a decimal point or exponent.
Float	3.14 -1.1e10	Numbers with a decimal point, or numbers with an exponent.
Null	null	A literal null number. Matches the explicit null value and numbers with an undefined value.

String Operators

Expressions based on string operators result in string values.

Operator	Usage	Description
+	'Title: ' + v.note.title	Concatenates two strings together.

String Literals



String literals must be enclosed in single quotation marks 'like this'.

Literal	Usage	Description
string	'hello world'	Literal strings must be enclosed in single quotation marks. Double quotation marks are reserved for enclosing attribute values, and must be escaped in strings.
\<escape>	'\n'	Whitespace characters: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • \t (tab) • \n (newline)

Literal	Usage	Description
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <code>\r</code> (carriage return) <p>Escaped characters:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <code>\"</code> (literal <code>"</code>) • <code>\'</code> (literal <code>'</code>) • <code>\\</code> (literal <code>\</code>)
Unicode	<code>'\u####'</code>	A Unicode code point. The <code>#</code> symbols are hexadecimal digits. A Unicode literal requires four digits.
null	<code>null</code>	A literal null string. Matches the explicit null value and strings with an undefined value.

Comparison Operators

Expressions based on comparison operators result in a `true` or `false` value. For comparison purposes, numbers are treated as the same type. In all other cases, comparisons check both value and type.

Operator	Alternative	Usage	Description
<code>==</code>	<code>eq</code>	<code>1 == 1</code> <code>1 == 1.0</code> <code>1 eq 1</code>  Note: <code>undefined==null</code> evaluates to <code>true</code> .	Returns <code>true</code> if the operands are equal. This comparison is valid for all data types.  Warning: Don't use the <code>==</code> operator for objects, as opposed to basic types, such as Integer or String. For example, <code>object1==object2</code> evaluates inconsistently on the client versus the server and isn't reliable.
<code>!=</code>	<code>ne</code>	<code>1 != 2</code> <code>1 != true</code> <code>1 != '1'</code> <code>null != false</code> <code>1 ne 2</code>	Returns <code>true</code> if the operands are not equal. This comparison is valid for all data types.
<code><</code>	<code>lt</code>	<code>1 < 2</code> <code>1 lt 2</code>	Returns <code>true</code> if the first operand is numerically less than the second. You must escape the <code><</code> operator to <code>&lt;</code> to use it in component markup. Alternatively, you can use the <code>lt</code> operator.
<code>></code>	<code>gt</code>	<code>42 > 2</code> <code>42 gt 2</code>	Returns <code>true</code> if the first operand is numerically greater than the second.
<code><=</code>	<code>le</code>	<code>2 <= 42</code> <code>2 le 42</code>	Returns <code>true</code> if the first operand is numerically less than or equal to the second. You must escape

Operator	Alternative	Usage	Description
			the <code><=</code> operator to <code>&lt;t;=</code> to use it in component markup. Alternatively, you can use the <code>le</code> operator.
<code>>=</code>	<code>ge</code>	<code>42 >= 42</code> <code>42 ge 42</code>	Returns <code>true</code> if the first operand is numerically greater than or equal to the second.

Logical Operators

Expressions based on logical operators result in a `true` or `false` value.

Operator	Usage	Description
<code>&&</code>	<code>isEnabled && hasPermission</code>	Returns <code>true</code> if both operands are individually true. You must escape the <code>&&</code> operator to <code>&amp; &amp;</code> to use it in component markup. Alternatively, you can use the <code>and()</code> function and pass it two arguments. For example, <code>and(isEnabled, hasPermission)</code> .
<code> </code>	<code>hasPermission isRequired</code>	Returns <code>true</code> if either operand is individually true.
<code>!</code>	<code>!isRequired</code>	Unary operator. Returns <code>true</code> if the operand is false. This operator should not be confused with the <code>!</code> delimiter used to start an expression in <code>{!}</code> . You can combine the expression delimiter with this negation operator to return the logical negation of a value, for example, <code>{!!true}</code> returns <code>false</code> .

Logical Literals

Logical values are never equivalent to non-logical values. That is, only `true == true`, and only `false == false`; `1 != true`, and `0 != false`, and `null != false`.

Literal	Usage	Description
<code>true</code>	<code>true</code>	A boolean <code>true</code> value.
<code>false</code>	<code>false</code>	A boolean <code>false</code> value.

Conditional Operator

There is only one conditional operator, the traditional ternary operator.

Operator	Usage	Description
<code>? :</code>	<code>(1 != 2) ? "Obviously" : "Black is White"</code>	The operand before the <code>?</code> operator is evaluated as a boolean. If true, the second operand is returned. If false, the third operand is returned.

SEE ALSO:

[Expression Functions Reference](#)

Expression Functions Reference

The expression language contains math, string, array, comparison, boolean, and conditional functions. All functions are case-sensitive.

Math Functions

The math functions perform math operations on numbers. They take numerical arguments. The Corresponding Operator column lists equivalent operators, if any.



Function	Alternative	Usage	Description	Corresponding Operator
<code>add</code>	<code>concat</code>	<code>add(1, 2)</code>	Adds the first argument to the second.	<code>+</code>
<code>sub</code>	<code>subtract</code>	<code>sub(10, 2)</code>	Subtracts the second argument from the first.	<code>-</code>
<code>mult</code>	<code>multiply</code>	<code>mult(2, 10)</code>	Multiplies the first argument by the second.	<code>*</code>
<code>div</code>	<code>divide</code>	<code>div(4, 2)</code>	Divides the first argument by the second.	<code>/</code>
<code>mod</code>	<code>modulus</code>	<code>mod(5, 2)</code>	Returns the integer remainder resulting from dividing the first argument by the second.	<code>%</code>
<code>abs</code>		<code>abs(-5)</code>	Returns the absolute value of the argument: the same number if the argument is positive, and the number without its negative sign if the number is negative. For example, <code>abs(-5)</code> is 5.	None

Function	Alternative	Usage	Description	Corresponding Operator
<code>neg</code>	<code>negate</code>	<code>neg(100)</code>	Reverses the sign of the argument. For example, <code>neg(100)</code> is <code>-100</code> .	<code>-</code> (unary)

String Functions

Function	Alternative	Usage	Description	Corresponding Operator
<code>concat</code>	<code>add</code>	<code>concat('Hello ', 'world')</code> <code>add('Walk ', 'the dog')</code>	Concatenates the two arguments.	<code>+</code>

Informational Functions

Function	Usage	Description
<code>length</code>	<code>myArray.length</code>	Returns the length of an array or a string.
<code>empty</code>	<code>empty(v.attributeName)</code>  Note: This function works for arguments of type <code>String</code> , <code>Array</code> , <code>Object</code> , <code>List</code> , <code>Map</code> , or <code>Set</code> .	<p>Returns <code>true</code> if the argument is empty. An empty argument is <code>undefined</code>, <code>null</code>, an empty array, or an empty string. An object with no properties is not considered empty.</p> <p> Tip: <code>{! !empty(v.myArray)}</code> evaluates faster than <code>{!v.myArray && v.myArray.length > 0}</code> so we recommend <code>empty()</code> to improve performance.</p> <p>The <code>\$A.util.isEmpty()</code> method in JavaScript is equivalent to the <code>empty()</code> expression in markup.</p>

Comparison Functions

Comparison functions take two number arguments and return `true` or `false` depending on the comparison result. The `eq` and `ne` functions can also take other data types for their arguments, such as strings.

Function	Usage	Description	Corresponding Operator
<code>equals</code>	<code>equals(1, 1)</code>	Returns <code>true</code> if the specified arguments are equal. The arguments can be any data type.	<code>==</code> or <code>eq</code>

Function	Usage	Description	Corresponding Operator
<code>notequals</code>	<code>notequals(1,2)</code>	Returns <code>true</code> if the specified arguments are not equal. The arguments can be any data type.	<code>!=</code> or <code>ne</code>
<code>lessthan</code>	<code>lessthan(1,5)</code>	Returns <code>true</code> if the first argument is numerically less than the second argument.	<code><</code> or <code>lt</code>
<code>greaterthan</code>	<code>greaterthan(5,1)</code>	Returns <code>true</code> if the first argument is numerically greater than the second argument.	<code>></code> or <code>gt</code>
<code>lessthanorequal</code>	<code>lessthanorequal(1,2)</code>	Returns <code>true</code> if the first argument is numerically less than or equal to the second argument.	<code><=</code> or <code>le</code>
<code>greaterthanorequal</code>	<code>greaterthanorequal(2,1)</code>	Returns <code>true</code> if the first argument is numerically greater than or equal to the second argument.	<code>>=</code> or <code>ge</code>

Boolean Functions

Boolean functions operate on Boolean arguments. They are equivalent to logical operators.

Function	Usage	Description	Corresponding Operator
<code>and</code>	<code>and(isEnabled, hasPermission)</code>	Returns <code>true</code> if both arguments are true.	<code>&&</code>
<code>or</code>	<code>or(hasPermission, hasVIPPass)</code>	Returns <code>true</code> if either one of the arguments is true.	<code> </code>
<code>not</code>	<code>not(isNew)</code>	Returns <code>true</code> if the argument is false.	<code>!</code>

Conditional Function

Function	Usage	Description	Corresponding Operator
<code>if</code>	<code>if(isEnabled, 'Enabled', 'Not enabled')</code>	Evaluates the first argument as a boolean. If true, returns the second argument. Otherwise, returns the third argument.	<code>?:</code> (ternary)

CHAPTER 5 UI Components

The framework provides common user interface components in the `ui` namespace. All of these components extend either `aura:component` or a child component of `aura:component`. `aura:component` is an abstract component that provides a default rendering implementation. User interface components such as `ui:input` and `ui:output` provide easy handling of common user interface events like keyboard and mouse interactions. Each component can be styled and extended accordingly.

Complex, Interactive Components

The following components contain one or more sub-components and are interactive.

Type	Key Components	Description
Autocomplete	<code>ui:autocomplete</code>	An input field that suggests a list of values as you type
Carousel	<code>ui:carousel</code>	A list of pages that can be swiped horizontally
	<code>ui:carouselPage</code>	A scrollable page in a <code>ui:carousel</code> component
Dialog	<code>ui:panelDialog</code>	A modal or non-modal overlay
	<code>ui:panelManager</code>	A component that instantiates and handles dialogs
Message	<code>ui:message</code>	A message notification of varying severity levels
Menu	<code>ui:menu</code>	A drop-down list with a trigger that controls its visibility. This component extends <code>ui:popup</code> .
	<code>ui:menuList</code>	A list of menu items
	<code>ui:actionMenuItem</code>	A menu item that triggers an action
	<code>ui:checkboxMenuItem</code>	A menu item that supports multiple selection and can be used to trigger an action
	<code>ui:radioMenuItem</code>	A menu item that supports single selection and can be used to trigger an action
	<code>ui:menuItemSeparator</code>	A visual separator for menu items
	<code>ui:menuItem</code>	An abstract and extensible component for menu items in a <code>ui:menuList</code> component
	<code>ui:menuTrigger</code>	A trigger that expands and collapses a menu
	<code>ui:menuTriggerLink</code>	A link that triggers a dropdown menu. This component extends <code>ui:menuTrigger</code>

Type	Key Components	Description
Popup	<code>ui:popup</code>	A popup with a trigger that controls its visibility.
	<code>ui:popupTarget</code>	A container that's displayed in response to a trigger.
	<code>ui:popupTrigger</code>	A trigger that expands and collapses a menu.
Tabset	<code>ui:tab</code>	A single tab in a <code>ui:tabset</code> component
	<code>ui:tabBar</code>	A list wrapper for tabs in a <code>ui:tabset</code> component
	<code>ui:tabItem</code>	A single tab that's rendered by a <code>ui:tabBar</code> component
	<code>ui:tabset</code>	A set of tabs that's displayed in an unordered list

Input Control Components

The following components are interactive, for example, like buttons and checkboxes.

Type	Key Components	Description
Button	<code>ui:button</code>	An actionable button that can be pressed or clicked
Checkbox	<code>ui:inputCheckbox</code>	A selectable option that supports multiple selections
	<code>ui:outputCheckbox</code>	Displays a read-only value of the checkbox
Radio button	<code>ui:inputRadio</code>	A selectable option that supports only a single selection
Drop-down List	<code>ui:inputSelect</code>	A drop-down list with options
	<code>ui:inputSelectOption</code>	An option in a <code>ui:inputSelect</code> component
	<code>ui:inputSelectOptionGroup</code>	

Visual Components

The following components provides informative cues, for example, like error messages and loading spinners.

Type	Key Components	Description
Field-level error	<code>ui:inputDefaultError</code>	An error message that is displayed when an error occurs
Input Label	<code>ui:label</code>	A text label that binds to an input component
Layout	<code>ui:block</code>	A horizontal layout that provides two or three columns
	<code>ui:vbox</code>	A vertical layout that provides two or three rows
List	<code>ui:list</code>	A collection of items that can be iterated over and displayed
Popup	<code>ui:popup</code>	A popup with a trigger that controls its visibility

Type	Key Components	Description
	<code>ui:popupTarget</code>	A container that's displayed when the popup is triggered
	<code>ui:popupTrigger</code>	A trigger that expands and collapses a popup
Spinner	<code>ui:spinner</code>	A loading spinner

Field Components

The following components enables you to enter or display values.

Type	Key Components	Description
Currency	<code>ui:inputCurrency</code>	An input field for entering currency
	<code>ui:outputCurrency</code>	Displays currency in a default or specified format
Email	<code>ui:inputEmail</code>	An input field for entering an email address
	<code>ui:outputEmail</code>	Displays a clickable email address
Date and time	<code>ui:inputDate</code>	An input field for entering a date
	<code>ui:inputDateTime</code>	An input field for entering a date and time
	<code>ui:outputDate</code>	Displays a date in the default or specified format
	<code>ui:outputDateTime</code>	Displays a date and time in the default or specified format
Password	<code>ui:inputSecret</code>	An input field for entering secret text
Percentage	<code>ui:inputPercent</code>	An input field for entering a percentage
	<code>ui:outputPercent</code>	Displays a percentage in the default or specified format
Phone Number	<code>ui:inputPhone</code>	An input field for entering a telephone number
	<code>ui:outputPhone</code>	Displays a phone number
Number	<code>ui:inputNumber</code>	An input field for entering a numerical value
	<code>ui:outputNumber</code>	Displays a number
Range	<code>ui:inputRange</code>	An input field for entering a value within a range
Rich Text	<code>ui:inputRichText</code>	An input field for entering rich text
	<code>ui:outputRichText</code>	Displays rich text
Search	<code>ui:inputSearch</code>	An input field for entering a search string
Text	<code>ui:inputText</code>	An input field for entering a single line of text
	<code>ui:outputText</code>	Displays text
Text Area	<code>ui:inputTextArea</code>	An input field for entering multiple lines of text

Type	Key Components	Description
	<code>ui:outputTextArea</code>	Displays a read-only text area
URL	<code>ui:inputURL</code>	An input field for entering a URL
	<code>ui:outputURL</code>	Displays a clickable URL

SEE ALSO:

[Using the UI Components](#)

[Components](#)

[Component Bundles](#)

UI Events

UI components capture user interface events such as keyboard and mouse interactions, enabling you to handle them easily.

Capture a UI event by defining its handler on the component. For example, you want to listen to the HTML DOM event, `onblur`, on a `ui:inputTextArea` component.

```
<ui:inputTextArea aura:id="textarea" value="My text area" label="Type something"
    blur="{!c.handleBlur}" />
```

The `blur="{!c.handleBlur}"` listens to the `onblur` event and wires it to your client-side controller. When you trigger the event, the following client-side controller handles the event.

```
handleBlur : function(cmp, event, helper){
    var elem = cmp.find("textarea").getElement();
    //do something else
}
```

These events are available to any components that implement the `ui:visible` and `ui:uiEvents` interfaces. The `ui:visible` interface provides event registration for mouse events and attributes that defines a component's class and label. The `ui:uiEvents` interface provides event registration for form events, such as `blur` and `focus`.

For all available events on all components, refer to the [Reference Doc App](#) on page 234.

Using the UI Components


Users interact with your app through input elements to select or enter values. Components such as `ui:inputText` and `ui:inputCheckbox` correspond to common input elements. These components simplify event handling for user interface events.



Note: For all available component attributes and events, see the component reference at [Reference Doc App](#) on page 234.

To use input components in your own custom component, add them to your `.cmp` or `.app` file. This example is a basic set up of a text field and button. The `aura:id` attribute defines a unique ID that enables you to reference the component from your JavaScript code using `cmp.find("myID");`.

```
<ui:inputText label="Name" aura:id="name" placeholder="First, Last"/>
<ui:outputText aura:id="nameOutput" value=""/>
<ui:button aura:id="outputButton" label="Submit" press="{!c.getInput}"/>
```

 **Note:** All text fields must specify the `label` attribute to provide a textual label of the field. If you must hide the label from view, set `labelClass="assitiveText"` to make the label available to assistive technologies.

The `ui:outputText` component acts as a placeholder for the output value of its corresponding `ui:inputText` component. The value in the `ui:outputText` component can be set with the following client-side controller action.

```
getInput : function(cmp, event) {
    var fullName = cmp.find("name").get("v.value");
    var outName = cmp.find("nameOutput");
    outName.set("v.value", fullName);
}
```

Date and Time Fields

Date and time fields provide client-side localization, date picker support, and support for common keyboard and mouse events. If you want to render the output from these field components, use the respective `ui:output` components. For example, to render the output for the `ui:inputDate` component, use `ui:outputDate`.

Date and Time fields are represented by the following components.

Field Type	Description	Related Components
Date	An input field for entering a date of type text.	<code>ui:inputDate</code> <code>ui:outputDate</code>
Date and Time	An input field for entering a date and time of type text.	<code>ui:inputDateTime</code> <code>ui:outputDateTime</code>

Using the Date and Time Fields

This is a basic set up of a date field with a date picker.

```
<ui:inputDate aura:id="dateField" label="Birthday" value="2000-01-01"
displayDatePicker="true"/>
```

This example results in the following HTML.

```
<div class="uiInput uiInputDate">
  <label class="uiLabel-left uiLabel">
    <span>Birthday</span>
  </label>
  <input placeholder="MMM d, yyyy" type="text" class="uiInput uiInputDate">
  <a class="datePicker-openIcon" aria-haspopup="true">
    <span class="assitiveText">Date Picker</span>
  </a>
  <div class="uiDatePicker">
    <!--Date picker set to visible when icon is clicked-->
  </div>
</div>
```

Styling Your Date and Time Fields

You can style the appearance of your date and time field and output in the CSS file of your component.

The following example provides styles to a `ui:inputDateTime` component with the `myStyle` selector.

```
<!-- Component markup -->
<ui:inputDateTime class="myStyle" label="Date" displayDatePicker="true"/>

/* CSS */
.THIS .myStyle {
  border: 1px solid #dce4ec;
  border-radius: 4px;
}
```

SEE ALSO:

- [Input Component Labels](#)
- [Handling Events with Client-Side Controllers](#)
- [Localization](#)
- [CSS in Components](#)

Number Fields

Number fields can contain a numerical value. They support client-side formatting, localization, and common keyboard and mouse events.

If you want to render the output from these field components, use the respective `ui:output` components. For example, to render the output for the `ui:inputNumber` component, use `ui:outputNumber`.

Number fields are represented by the following components.

Type	Related Components	Description
Number	<code>ui:inputNumber</code>	An input field for entering a numerical value
	<code>ui:outputNumber</code>	Displays a number
Currency	<code>ui:inputCurrency</code>	An input field for entering currency
	<code>ui:outputCurrency</code>	Displays currency
Percentage	<code>ui:inputPercent</code>	An input field for entering a numerical percentage value.
	<code>ui:outputPercent</code>	
Range	<code>ui:inputRange</code>	A slider for numerical input.

Using the Number Fields

This example shows a basic set up of a percentage number field, which displays 50% in the field.

```
<ui:label label="Discount" for="discountField"/>
<ui:inputPercent aura:id="discountField" value="0.5"/>
```

This is a basic set up of a range input, with the `min` and `max` attributes.

```
<ui:label label="Quantity" for="qtyField"/>
<ui:inputRange aura:id="qtyField" min="1" max="10"/>
```

`ui:label` provides a text label for the corresponding field.

These examples result in the following HTML.

```
<label for="globalId" class="uiLabel"><span>Discount</span></label>
<input aria-describedby max="999999999999999" step="1" placeholder type="text"
min="-999999999999999" id="globalId" class="uiInput uiInputText uiInputNumber uiInputPercent">
```

```
<label for="globalId" class="uiLabel"><span>Quantity</span></label>
<input max="10" step="1" type="range" min="1" id="globalId" class="uiInput uiInputText
uiInputNumber uiInputRange">
```

Returning a Valid Number

The value of the `ui:inputNumber` component expects a valid number and won't work with commas. If you want to include commas, use `type="Integer"` instead of `type="String"`.

This example returns 100,000.

```
<aura:attribute name="number" type="Integer" default="100,000"/>
<ui:inputNumber label="Number" value="{#v.number}"/>
```



Note: `{#v.number}` is an unbound expression. This means that any change to the `value` attribute in `ui:inputNumber` doesn't propagate back to affect the value of the `number` attribute in the parent component. For more information, see [Data Binding in Expressions](#) on page 31.

This example also returns 100,000.

```
<aura:attribute name="number" type="String" default="100000"/>
<ui:inputNumber label="Number" value="{#v.number}"/>
```

Formatting and Localizing the Number Fields

The `format` attribute determines the format of the number input. The Locale default format is used if none is provided. The following code is a basic set up of a number field, which displays 10,000.00 based on the provided `format` attribute.

```
<ui:label label="Cost" for="costField"/>
<ui:inputNumber aura:id="costField" format="#,##0,000.00#" value="10000"/>
```

The following code is a basic set up of a percentage field with client-side formatting, which displays 14.000% based on the provided `format` attribute.

```
<ui:label label="Growth" for="pField"/>
<ui:outputPercent aura:id="pField" value="0.14" format=".000%"/>
```

The following code is a basic set up of a currency field with localization, which displays £10.00 based on the provided `currencySymbol` and `format` attributes. You can also set the `currencyCode` attribute with an ISO 4217 currency code, such as USD or GBP.

```
<ui:outputCurrency value="10" currencySymbol="£" format="¤.00" />
```

Styling Your Number Fields

You can style the appearance of your number field and output. In the CSS file of your component, add the corresponding class selectors. The following class selectors provide styles to the string rendering of the numbers. For example, to style the `ui:inputCurrency` component, use `.THIS .uiInputCurrency`, or `.THIS.uiInputCurrency` if it's a top-level element.

The following example provides styles to a `ui:inputNumber` component with the `myStyle` selector.

```
<!-- Component markup -->
<ui:inputNumber class="myStyle" label="Amount" placeholder="0" />

/* CSS */
.THIS .myStyle {
  border: 1px solid #dce4ec;
  border-radius: 4px;
}
```

SEE ALSO:

[Input Component Labels](#)

[Handling Events with Client-Side Controllers](#)

[Localization](#)

[CSS in Components](#)

Text Fields

A text field can contain alphanumerical characters and special characters. They provide common keyboard and mouse events. If you want to render the output from these field components, use the respective `ui:output` components. For example, to render the output for the `ui:inputPhone` component, use `ui:outputPhone`.

Text fields are represented by the following components.

Type	Related Components	Description
Email	<code>ui:inputEmail</code>	An input field for entering an email address
	<code>ui:outputEmail</code>	Displays a clickable email address
Password	<code>ui:inputSecret</code>	An input field for entering secret text
Phone Number	<code>ui:inputPhone</code>	An input field for entering a telephone number
	<code>ui:outputPhone</code>	Displays a clickable phone number
Rich Text	<code>ui:inputRichText</code>	An input field for entering rich text
	<code>ui:outputRichText</code>	Displays rich text
Search	<code>ui:inputSearch</code>	An input field for entering a search term.
Text	<code>ui:inputText</code>	An input field for entering single line of text
	<code>ui:outputText</code>	Displays text

Type	Related Components	Description
Text Area	<code>ui:inputTextArea</code>	An input field for entering multiple lines of text
	<code>ui:outputTextArea</code>	Displays a read-only text area
URL	<code>ui:inputURL</code>	An input field for entering a URL
	<code>ui:outputURL</code>	Displays a clickable URL

Using the Text Fields

Text fields are typically used in a form. For example, this is a basic set up of an email field.

```
<ui:inputEmail aura:id="email" label="Email" placeholder="abc@email.com"/>
```

This example results in the following HTML.

```
<div class="uiInput uiInputText uiInputEmail">
  <label class="uiLabel-left uiLabel">
    <span>Email</span>
  </label>
  <input placeholder="abc@email.com" type="email" class="uiInput uiInputText uiInputEmail">
</div>
```

Providing Auto-complete Suggestions in Text Fields

Auto-complete is available with the `ui:autocomplete` component, which uses a text or text area of its own. To use a text area, set the `inputType="inputTextArea"`. The default is `inputText`.

Styling Your Text Fields

You can style the appearance of your text field and output. In the CSS file of your component, add the corresponding class selectors. For example, to style the `ui:inputPhone` component, use `.THIS .uiInputPhone`, or `.THIS.uiInputPhone` if it's a top-level element.

The following example provides styles to a `ui:inputText` component with the `myStyle` selector.

```
<!-- Component markup-->
<ui:inputText class="myStyle" label="Name"/>

/* CSS */
.THIS .myStyle {
  border: 1px solid #dce4ec;
```

```
border-radius: 4px;
}
```

SEE ALSO:

[Rich Text Fields](#)[Input Component Labels](#)[Handling Events with Client-Side Controllers](#)[Localization](#)[CSS in Components](#)

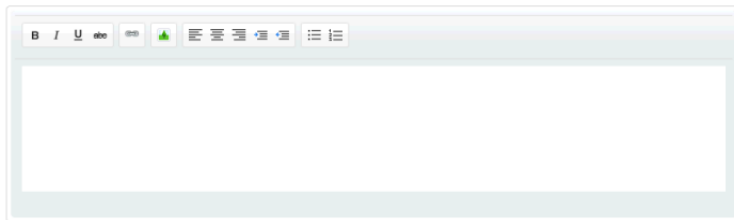
Rich Text Fields

`ui:inputRichText` is an input field for entering rich text. The following code shows a basic implementation of this component, which is rendered as a text area and button. A button click runs the client-side controller action that returns the input value in a `ui:outputRichText` component. In this case, the value returns “Aura” in bold, and “input rich text demo” in red.

```
<!--Rich text demo-->
<ui:inputRichText isRichText="false" aura:id="inputRT" label="Rich Text Demo"
  cols="50" rows="5" value="&lt;b&gt;Aura&lt;/b&gt;, &lt;span style='color:red'&gt;input
rich text demo&lt;/span&gt;"/>
<ui:button aura:id="outputButton"
  buttonTitle="Click to see what you put into the rich text field"
  label="Display" press="{!c.getInput}"/>
<ui:outputRichText aura:id="outputRT" value=" "/>

/*Client-side controller*/
getInput : function(cmp) {
  var userInput = cmp.find("inputRT").get("v.value");
  var output = cmp.find("outputRT");
  output.set("v.value", userInput);
}
```

In this demo, the `isRichText="false"` attribute replaces the component with the `ui:inputTextArea` component. The WYSIWYG rich text editor is provided when this attribute is not set, as shown below.



The width and height of the rich text editor are independent of those on the `ui:inputTextArea` component. To set the width and height of the component when you set `isRichText="false"`, use the `cols` and `rows` attributes. Otherwise, use the `width` and `height` attributes.

SEE ALSO:

[Text Fields](#)

Checkboxes

Checkboxes are clickable and actionable, and they can be presented in a group for multiple selection. You can create a checkbox with `ui:inputCheckbox`, which inherits the behavior and events from `ui:input`. The `value` and `disabled` attributes control the state of a checkbox, and events such as `click` and `change` determine its behavior. Events must be used separately on each checkbox.

Here are several basic ways to set up a checkbox.

Checked

To select the checkbox, set `value="true"`. Alternatively, `value` can take in a value from a model.

```
<ui:inputCheckbox value="true"/>

<!--Initializing the component-->
<ui:inputCheckbox aura:id="inCheckbox" value="{!m.checked}"/>

//Initializing with a model
public Boolean getChecked() {
    return true;
}
```

The model is in a Java class specified by the `model` attribute on the `aura:component` tag.

Disabled State

```
<ui:inputCheckbox disabled="true" label="Select" />
```

The previous example results in the following HTML.

```
<label class="uiLabel-left uiLabel" for="globalId"><span>Select</span></label>
<input disabled="disabled" type="checkbox" id="globalId" class="uiInput uiInputCheckbox">
```

Working with Events

Common events for `ui:inputCheckbox` include the `click` and `change` events. For example, `click="{!c.done}"` calls the client-side controller action with the function name, `done`.

The following code crosses out the checkbox item.

```
<!--The checkbox-->
<ui:inputCheckbox label="Cross this out" click="{!c.crossout}" class="line" />

/*The controller action*/
crossout : function(cmp, event){
    var elem = event.getSource().getElement();
    $A.util.toggleClass(elem, "done");
}
```

Styling Your Checkboxes

The `ui:inputCheckbox` component is customizable with regular CSS styling. This example shows a checkbox with the following image.



```
<ui:inputCheckbox labelClass="check"
    label="Select?" value="true" />
```

The following CSS style replaces the default checkbox with the given image.

```
.THIS input[type="checkbox"] {
    display: none;
}

.THIS .check span {
    margin: 20px;
}

.THIS input[type="checkbox"]+label {
    display: inline-block;
    width: 20px;
    height: 20px;
    vertical-align: middle;
    background: url('images/checkbox.png') top left;
    cursor: pointer;
}

.THIS input[type="checkbox"]:checked+label {
    background: url('images/checkbox.png') bottom left;
}
```

SEE ALSO:

[Java Models](#)

[Handling Events with Client-Side Controllers](#)

[CSS in Components](#)

Radio Buttons

Radio buttons are clickable and actionable, and they can only be individually selected when presented in a group. You can create a radio button with `ui:inputRadio`, which inherits the behavior and events from `ui:input`. The `value` and `disabled` attributes control the state of a radio button, and events such as `click` and `change` determine its behavior. Events must be used separately on each radio button.

If you want to use radio buttons in a menu, use `ui:radioMenuItem` instead.

Here are several basic ways to set up a radio button.

Selected

To select the radio button, set `value="true"`.

```
<ui:inputRadio value="true" label="Select?"/>
```

Disabled State

```
<ui:inputRadio label="Select" disabled="true"/>
```

The previous example results in the following HTML.

```
<label class="uiLabel-left uiLabel" for="globalId"><span>Select</span></label>
<input type="radio" id="globalId" class="uiInput uiInputRadio">
```

Providing Labels using An Attribute

You can also initialize the label values using an attribute. This example uses an attribute to populate the radio button labels and wire them up to a client-side controller action when the radio button is selected or deselected.

```
<!--docsample:labelsAttribute-->
<aura:component>
    <aura:attribute name="stages" type="String[]" default="Any,Open,Closed,Closed,Closed Won"/>
    <aura:iteration items="{#v.stages}" var="stage">
        <ui:inputRadio label="{#stage}" change="{!c.doSomething}"/>
    </aura:iteration>
</aura:component>
```



Note: `{#v.stages}` and `{#stage}` are unbound expressions. This means that any change to the value of the `items` attribute in `aura:iteration` or the `label` attribute in `ui:inputRadio` don't propagate back to affect the value of the `stages` attribute in `docsample:labelsAttribute`. For more information, see [Data Binding in Expressions](#) on page 31.

Working with Events

Common events for `ui:inputRadio` include the `click` and `change` events. For example, `click="{!c.showItem}"` calls the client-side controller action with the function name, `showItem`.

The following code updates the CSS class of a component when the radio button is clicked.

```
<!--The radio button-->
<ui:inputRadio click="{!c.showItem}" label="Show Item"/>
```

```
/* The controller action */
showItem : function(cmp, event) {
    var elem = cmp.find('myCmp');
    $A.util.toggleClass(elem, "cssClass");
}
```

SEE ALSO:

[Handling Events with Client-Side Controllers](#)

[CSS in Components](#)

Buttons

A button is clickable and actionable, providing a textual label, an image, or both. You can create a button in three different ways:

- Text-only Button

```
<ui:button label="Find" />
```

- Image-only Button

```
<ui:button iconImgSrc="/auraFW/resources/aura/images/search.png" label="Find"
labelDisplay="false"/>
```

- Button with Text and Image

```
<ui:button label="Find" iconImgSrc="/auraFW/resources/aura/images/search.png"/>
```

HTML Rendering

The markup for a button with text and image results in the following HTML.

```
<button class="default uiBlock uiButton" accesskey type="button">
  
  <span class="label bBody truncate" dir="ltr">Find</span>
</button>
```

Working with Click Events

The `press` event on the `ui:button` component is fired when the user clicks the button. In the following example, `press="{!c.getInput}"` calls the client-side controller action with the function name, `getInput`, which outputs the input text value.

```
<aura:component>
  <ui:inputText aura:id="name" label="Enter Name:" placeholder="Your Name" />
  <ui:button aura:id="button" label="Click me" press="{!c.getInput}"/>
  <ui:outputText aura:id="outName" value="" class="text"/>
</aura:component>
```

```
/* Client-side controller */
({
  getInput : function(cmp, evt) {
    var myName = cmp.find("name").get("v.value");
    var myText = cmp.find("outName");
    var greet = "Hi, " + myName;
    myText.set("v.value", greet);
  }
})
```

Controlling Propagation

To control propagation of DOM events, use the `stopPropagation` attribute. This example toggles propagation on a `ui:button` component.

```
<aura:component>
  <aura:attribute name="propagation" type="Boolean" default="false"/>
  <div onclick="{!c.handleWrapperClick}">
    <ui:button press="{!c.handleClick}" stopPropagation="{!v.propagation}" label="Aura
    Button"/>
  </div><br/>
  Propagation status: {! v.propagation ? 'OFF' : 'ON'}<br/>
  <ui:button press="{!c.togglePropagation}" label="Toggle Propagation"/>
</aura:component>
```

```
/* Client-side controller */
({
  handleClick: function(cmp, event, helper) {
    console.log(event);
  },
  handleWrapperClick: function(cmp, event, helper) {
    alert('Click propagated to wrapper');
  },
  togglePropagation: function(cmp, event, helper) {
    cmp.set('v.propagation', !cmp.get('v.propagation'));
  }
})
```

Styling Your Buttons

The `ui:button` component is customizable with regular CSS styling. In the CSS file of your component, add the following class selector.

```
.THIS.uiButton {
  margin-left: 20px;
}
```

Note that no space is added in the `.THIS.uiButton` selector if your button component is a top-level element.

To override the styling for all `ui:button` components in your app, in the CSS file of your app, add the following class selector.

```
.THIS .uiButton {
  margin-left: 20px;
}
```

SEE ALSO:

[Handling Events with Client-Side Controllers](#)

[CSS in Components](#)

Drop-down Lists

Drop-down lists display a dropdown menu with available options. Both single and multiple selections are supported. You can create a drop-down list using `ui:inputSelect`, which inherits the behavior and events from `ui:input`.

Here are a few basic ways to set up a drop-down list.

For multiple selections, set the `multiple` attribute to `true`.

Single Selection

```
<ui:inputSelect>
  <ui:inputSelectOption text="Red"/>
  <ui:inputSelectOption text="Green" value="true"/>
  <ui:inputSelectOption text="Blue"/>
</ui:inputSelect>
```

Multiple Selection

```
<ui:inputSelect multiple="true">
  <ui:inputSelectOption text="All Primary" label="All Contacts" value="true"/>
  <ui:inputSelectOption text="All Primary" label="All Primary"/>
  <ui:inputSelectOption text="All Secondary" label="All Secondary"/>
</ui:inputSelect>
```

The default selected value is specified by `value="true"`. Each option is represented by `ui:inputSelectOption`.

Generating Options with `aura:iteration`

You can use `aura:iteration` to iterate over a list of items to generate options. This example iterates over a list of items and conditionally renders the options.

```
<aura:attribute name="contacts" type="String[]" default="All Contacts,Others"/>
<ui:inputSelect>
  <aura:iteration items="{!v.contacts}" var="contact">
    <aura:if isTrue="{!contact == 'All Contacts'}">
      <ui:inputSelectOption text="{!contact}" label="{!contact}"/>
    <aura:set attribute="else">
      <ui:inputSelectOption text="All Primary" label="All Primary"/>
      <ui:inputSelectOption text="All Secondary" label="All Secondary"/>
    </aura:set>
  </aura:if>
</aura:iteration>
</ui:inputSelect>
```

Generating Options Dynamically

Generate the options dynamically on component initialization.

```
<aura:component>
  <aura:handler name="init" value="{!this}" action="{!c.doInit}"/>
  <ui:inputSelect label="Select me:" class="dynamic" aura:id="InputSelectDynamic"/>
</aura:component>
```

The following client-side controller generates options using the `options` attribute on the `ui:inputSelect` component. `v.options` takes in the list of objects and converts them into list options. Although the sample code generates the options during initialization, the list of options can be modified anytime when you manipulate the list in `v.options`. The component automatically updates itself and rerenders with the new options.

```
({
  doInit : function(cmp) {
    var opts = [
      { class: "optionClass", label: "Option1", value: "opt1", selected: "true" },
      { class: "optionClass", label: "Option2", value: "opt2" },
      { class: "optionClass", label: "Option3", value: "opt3" }
    ];
    cmp.find("InputSelectDynamic").set("v.options", opts);
  }
})
```



Note: `class` is a reserved word that might not work with older versions of Internet Explorer. We recommend using `"class"` with double quotes.

In the preceding demo, the `opts` object constructs `InputOption` objects to create the `ui:inputSelectOptions` components within `ui:inputSelect`.

The `InputOption` object has these parameters.

Parameter	Type	Description
label	String	The label of the option to display on the user interface.
name	String	The name of the option.
selected	boolean	Indicates whether the option is selected.
value	String	The value of this option.

Working with Events

Common events for `ui:inputSelect` include the `change` and `click` events. For example, `change="{!c.onSelectChange}"` calls the client-side controller action with the function name, `onSelectChange`, when a user changes a selection.

Styling Your Field-level Errors

The `ui:inputSelect` component is customizable with regular CSS styling. The following CSS sample adds a fixed width to the drop-down menu.

```
.THIS.uiInputSelect {
  width: 200px;
  height: 100px;
}
```

Alternatively, use the `class` attribute to specify your own CSS class.

SEE ALSO:

[Handling Events with Client-Side Controllers](#)

[CSS in Components](#)

Field-level Errors

Field-level errors are displayed when a validation error occurs on the field after a user input. The framework creates a default error component, `ui:inputDefaultError`, which provides basic events such as `click` and `mouseover`. See [Validating Fields](#) for more information.

Alternatively, you can use `ui:message` for field-level errors.

Invalid password
Your password should be at least 6 alphanumeric characters long.

Here are a few basic ways to set up a field-level error using `ui:message`. The error message is persistent by default but you can set `closable="true"` if you want the user to be able to close it.

Visible

```
<ui:message title="Invalid password" severity="error" closable="true">
  Your password should be at least 6 alphanumeric characters long.
</ui:message>
```

Visible on error condition

```
<!--The ui:message component-->
<aura:renderIf isTrue="{!v.invalidPW}">
  <ui:message title="Invalid password" severity="error" closable="true">
    Your password should be at least 6 alphanumeric characters long.
  </ui:message>
</aura:renderIf>
```

```
<!--The client-side controller action-->
var pw = cmp.find("inPW").get("v.value");
if (pw.length >= 6) {
  outPW.set("v.value", pw);
  cmp.set("v.invalidPW", false);
} else {
  cmp.set("v.invalidPW", true);
}
```

`aura:renderIf` conditionally renders the body if the `isTrue` attribute evaluates to true.

Working with Events

Common events for `ui:message` include the `click` and `mouseover` events. For example, `click="{!c.revalidate}"` calls the client-side controller action with the function name, `revalidate`, when a user clicks on the error message.

Styling Your Field-Level Errors

The `ui:message` component is customizable with regular CSS styling. The following CSS sample replaces the default border. This component can be used with varying severity levels, which uses different styles. To compare the severity levels and styles, see the [ui:message demo](#).

Alternatively, use the `class` attribute to specify your own CSS class.

SEE ALSO:

[Handling Events with Client-Side Controllers](#)

[CSS in Components](#)

Menus

A menu is a drop-down list with a trigger that controls its visibility. You must provide the trigger and list of menu items. The dropdown menu and its menu items are hidden by default. You can change this by setting the `visible` attribute on the `ui:menuList` component to `true`. The menu items are shown only when you click the `ui:menuTriggerLink` component.

This example creates a menu with several items.

```
<ui:menu>
  <ui:menuTriggerLink aura:id="trigger" label="Opportunity Status"/>
  <ui:menuList class="actionMenu" aura:id="actionMenu">
    <ui:actionMenuItem aura:id="item2" label="Open"
click="{!c.updateTriggerLabel}"/>
    <ui:actionMenuItem aura:id="item3" label="Closed"
click="{!c.updateTriggerLabel}"/>
    <ui:actionMenuItem aura:id="item4" label="Closed Won"
click="{!c.updateTriggerLabel}"/>
  </ui:menuList>
</ui:menu>
```

The following components are nested in `ui:menu`.

Component	Description
<code>ui:menu</code>	A drop-down list with a trigger that controls its visibility
<code>ui:menuList</code>	A list of menu items
<code>ui:actionMenuItem</code>	A menu item that triggers an action
<code>ui:checkboxMenuItem</code>	A menu item that supports multiple selection and can be used to trigger an action
<code>ui:radioMenuItem</code>	A menu item that supports single selection and can be used to trigger an action
<code>ui:menuItemSeparator</code>	A visual separator for menu items
<code>ui:menuItem</code>	An abstract and extensible component for menu items in a <code>ui:menuList</code> component
<code>ui:menuTrigger</code>	A trigger that expands and collapses a menu

Component	Description
<code>ui:menuTriggerLink</code>	A link that triggers a dropdown menu. This component extends <code>ui:menuTrigger</code>

Horizontal Layouts

`ui:block` provides a horizontal layout for your components. It extends `aura:component` and is an actionable component. It is useful for laying out your labels, fields, and buttons or any groups of components in a row.

Here is a basic set up of a horizontal layout. The following sample code creates a horizontal view of an image, text field, and a button. The `ui:inputText` component renders in between the `left` and `right` attributes.

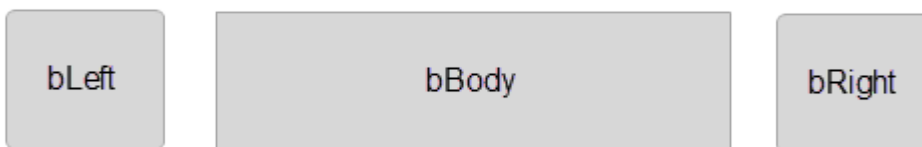
```
<ui:block>
  <aura:set attribute="left">
    <ui:image src="/auraFW/resources/aura/images/search.png" alt="bLeft" />
  </aura:set>
  <aura:set attribute="right">
    <ui:button label="Submit"/>
  </aura:set>
  <ui:inputText label="Text" labelPosition="hidden" />
</ui:block>
```

Working with Events

Common events for `ui:block` include the `click` and `mouseover` events. For example, `click="{!c.enable}"` calls the client-side controller action with the function name, `enable`, when a user clicks anywhere in the layout.

Styling Your Horizontal Layouts

`ui:block` is customizable with regular CSS styling. The output is rendered in `div` tags with the `bLeft`, `bRight`, and `bBody` classes.



The following CSS class styles the `bLeft` class on the `ui:block`.

```
.THIS.uiBlock .bLeft { //CSS declaration }
```

Alternatively, use the `class` attribute to specify your own CSS class.

SEE ALSO:

[Handling Events with Client-Side Controllers](#)

[CSS in Components](#)

Vertical Layouts

`ui:vbox` provides a vertical layout for your components. It extends `aura:component` and is an actionable component. It is useful for laying out groups of components vertically on a page.

Here is a basic set up of a vertical layout. The following sample code creates a vertical view of a header, body, and footer. The body of the component renders in between the `north` and `south` attributes.

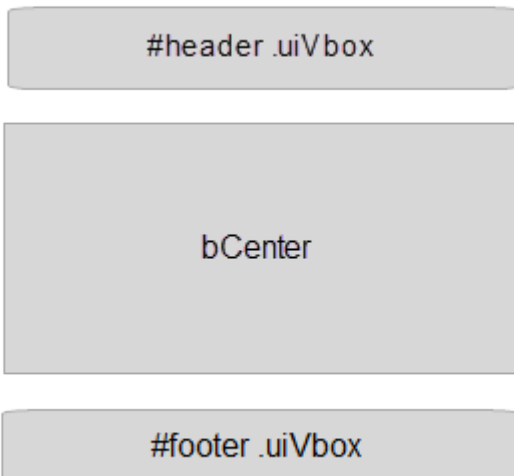
```
<ui:vbox>
  <aura:set attribute="north">
    <div id="header">Header</div>
  </aura:set>
  <aura:set attribute="south">
    <div id="footer">Footer</div>
  </aura:set>
  body
</ui:vbox>
```

Working with Events

Common events for `ui:vbox` include the `click` and `mouseover` events. For example, `click="{!c.enable}"` calls the client-side controller action with the function name, `enable`, when a user clicks anywhere in the layout.

Styling Your Vertical Layouts

`ui:vbox` is customizable with regular CSS styling. Given the above example, the output is rendered in `<div id="header" class="uiVbox">` and `<div id="footer" class="uiVbox">` tags, with the footer rendered in the bottom.



The following CSS class styles the `header` element in the `north` attribute.

```
.THIS #header { //CSS declaration }
```

SEE ALSO:

[Handling Events with Client-Side Controllers](#)

[CSS in Components](#)

Working with Auto-Complete

`ui:autocomplete` displays suggestions as users type in a text field. Data for this component is provided by a server-side model. This component provides its own text field and text area component. The default is a text field but you can change it to a text area by setting `inputType="inputTextArea"`.

Here is a basic set up of the auto-complete component with a default input text field.

```
<ui:autocomplete aura:id="autoComplete" optionVar="row"
    matchDone="{!c.handleMatchDone}"
    inputChange="{!c.handleInputChange}"
    selectListOption="{!c.handleSelectOption}">
    <aura:set attribute="dataProvider">
        <demo:dataProvider/>
    </aura:set>
    <aura:set attribute="listOption">
        <ui:autocompleteOption label="{!row.label}" keyword="{!row.keyword}"
                                value="{!row.value}" visible="{!row.visible}"/>
    </aura:set>
</ui:autocomplete>
```

Working with Events

Common events for `ui:autocomplete` include the `fetchData`, `inputChange`, `matchDone`, and `selectListOption` events. The behaviors for these events can be configured as desired.

fetchData

Fire the `fetchData` event if you want to fetch data through the data provider. For example, you can fire this event in the `inputChange` event when the input value changes. The `ui:autocomplete` component automatically matches text on the new data.

inputChange

Use the `inputChange` event to handle an input value change. Get the new value with `event.getParam("value")`. The following code handles a text match on existing data.

```
var matchEvt = acCmp.get("e.matchText");
matchEvt.setParams({
    keyword: event.getParam("value")
});
matchEvt.fire();
```

matchDone

Use the `matchDone` event to handle when a text matching has completed, regardless if a match has occurred. You can retrieve the number of matches with `event.getParam("size")`.

selectListOption

Use the `selectListOption` event to handle when a list option is selected. Get the options with `event.getParam("option")`; . This event is fired by the `ui:autocompleteList` component when a list option is selected.

Providing Data to the Auto-complete Component

In the basic set up above, `demo:dataProvider` provides the list of data to be displayed as suggestions when a text match occurs. `demo:dataProvider` extends `ui:dataProvider` and takes in a server-side model.

The following code is a sample data provider for the `ui:autocomplete` component.

```
<aura:component extends="ui:dataProvider"
    model="java://org.auraframework.impl.java.model.TestJavaModel">
    <aura:attribute name="dataType" type="String"/>
</aura:component>
```

In the client-side controller or helper function of your data provider, fire the `onchange` event on the parent `ui:dataProvider` component. This event handles any data changes on the list.

```
var data = component.get("m.listOfData");
var dataProvider = component.getConcreteComponent();
//Fire the onchange event in the ui:dataProvider component
this.fireDataChangeEvent(dataProvider, data);
```

See the data provider at `aura/src/test/components/uittest/testAutocompleteDataProvider` in the GitHub repo.

To learn how the data provider is retrieving data from the model, see the server-side model at `/aura-impl/src/test/java/org/auraframework/impl/java/model/TestJavaModel.java` in the [GitHub repo](#).

Styling Your Auto-complete Component

The `ui:autocomplete` component is customizable with regular CSS styling. For example, if you're using the default text field component provided by `ui:autocomplete`, you can use the following CSS selector.

```
.THIS.uiInputText {
    //CSS declaration
}
```

If you're using the default text area component provided by `ui:autocomplete`, change the CSS selector to `.THIS.uiInputTextArea`. Alternatively, use the `class` attribute to specify your own CSS class.

SEE ALSO:

[Handling Events with Client-Side Controllers](#)

[CSS in Components](#)

[Client-Side Runtime Binding of Components](#)

Creating Lists

You can create lists in three different ways, using `aura:iteration`, `ui:list`, or `ui:infiniteList`. `aura:iteration` is used for simple lists and can take in data from a model.

`ui:list` and `ui:infiniteList` provide a paging interface to navigate lists. `ui:list` can be used for more robust list implementations that retrieves and display more data as necessary, with a data provider and a template for each list item. Additionally, use `ui:infiniteList` if you want a robust list implementation similar to `ui:list`, but with a handler that enables you to retrieve and display more data when the user reaches the bottom of the list.

Here is a basic set up of the `ui:list` component with a required data provider and template.

```
<ui:list itemVar="item">
  <aura:set attribute="dataProvider">
    <auradev:testDataProvider />
  </aura:set>
  <aura:set attribute="header">
    Item List
  </aura:set>
  <aura:set attribute="itemTemplate">
    <auradocs:demoListTemplate label="{!item.label}" />
  </aura:set>
</ui:list>
```

`itemVar` is a required attribute that is used to iterate over the items provided by the item template. In the above example, `{!item.label}` iterates over the items provided by the data provider and displays the labels.

The sample template, `auradocs:demoListTemplate` is as follows. This template is a row of text generated by the data provider.

```
<aura:component>
  <aura:attribute name="label" type="String"/>
  <div class="row">
    {!v.label}
  </div>
</aura:component>
```

Working with List Events

`ui:list` and `ui:infiniteList` inherits from `ui:abstractList`. Common events for `ui:list` include user interface events like `click` events, and list-specific events like `refresh` and `triggerDataProvider`.

refresh

The `refresh` event handles a list data refresh and fires the `triggerDataProvider` event. You can fire the `refresh` event by using the following sample code in your client-side controller action.

```
var listData = cmp.find("listData");
listData.get("e.refresh").fire();
```

showMore

The `showMore` event in `ui:infiniteList` handles the fetching of your data and displays it. This event fires the `triggerDataProvider` event as well.

triggerDataProvider

The `triggerDataProvider` event triggers the providing of data from a data provider. It is also run during component initialization and refresh. For example, you can use this event if you want to retrieve more data in a `ui:infiniteList` component.

```
cmp.set("v.currentPage", targetPage);
var listData = component.find("listData");
listData.get("e.triggerDataProvider").fire();
```

Providing Data to the List Component

In the basic set up above, `auradocs:demoDataProvider` provides the list of data to the `ui:list` component. `auradocs:demoDataProvider` extends `ui:dataProvider` and takes in a server-side model.

The following code is the sample data provider, `auradocs:demoDataProvider`.

```
<aura:component extends="ui:dataProvider"
    model="java://org.auraframework.component.auradev.TestDataProviderModel"
    controller="java://org.auraframework.component.auradev.TestDataProviderController"
    description="A data provider for ui:list">
    <aura:handler name="provide" action="{!c.provide}"/>
</aura:component>
```

The `provide` event is fired on initialization by the parent `ui:abstractList` component. You can customize the `provide` event in your client-side controller. For example, the following code shows a sample `provide` helper function for a data provider.

```
var dataProvider = component.getConcreteComponent();
var action = dataProvider.get("c.getItems");

//Set the parameters for this action
action.setParams({
    "currentPage": dataProvider.get("v.currentPage"),
    "pageSize": dataProvider.get("v.pageSize")
    //Other ui:list or ui:infiniteList parameters
});

//Set the action callback
action.setCallback(this, function(response) {
    var state = response.getState();
    if (state === "SUCCESS") {
        var result = response.getReturnValue();
        this.fireDataChangeEvent(dataProvider, result);
    }
});
$A.enqueueAction(action);
```



Note: See the data provider at `aura-components/src/main/components/auradocs/demoDataProvider/` in the [GitHub repo](#).

To learn how the data provider is retrieving data from the model, see the server-side model at `aura-impl/src/main/java/org/auraframework/component/auradev/TestDataProviderModel.java`.

Styling Your List Component

The `ui:list` component is customizable with regular CSS styling. For example, the sample template code above has `<div class="row">`. To apply CSS, you can use the following CSS selector in the template component.

```
.THIS .row{  
    //CSS declaration  
}
```

SEE ALSO:

[Handling Events with Client-Side Controllers](#)

[CSS in Components](#)

CHAPTER 6 Using Labels

In this chapter ...

- `$Label`
- Input Component Labels
- Dynamically Populating Label Parameters
- Dynamically Creating Labels
- Customizing your Label Implementation
- Setting Label Values via a Parent Attribute

The framework supports labels to enable you to separate field labels from your code.

\$Label

Separating labels from source code makes it easier to translate and localize your applications. Use the `$Label` global value provider to access labels stored outside your code.

`$Label` doesn't have a default implementation but the `LocalizationAdapter` interface assumes that a label has a two-part name: a section name and a label name. This enables you to organize labels into sections with similar labels grouped together.

To customize the behavior of the `$Label` global value provider, see [Customizing your Label Implementation](#) on page 76.

Access a label using the dot notation, `$Label.<section>.<labelName>`; for example, `{!$Label.SocialApp.YouLike}`.

Each name must start with a letter or underscore so that the label can be accessed in an expression. For example, `{!$Label.1SocialApp.2YouLike}` is not valid because the section and label name each start with a number.

Input Component Labels

A label describes the purpose of an input component. To set a label on an input component, use the `label` attribute.

This example shows how to use labels using the `label` attribute on an input component.

```
<ui:inputNumber label="Pick a Number:" labelPosition="top" value="54" />
```

The label position can be `hidden`, `top`, `right`, or `bottom`. The default position is `left`.

Using \$Label

Use the `$Label` global value provider to access labels stored in an external source. For example:

```
<ui:inputNumber label="{!$Label.Number.PickOne}" />
```

Sourcing Labels from a Model

This example sources the labels from a model. The model has an `iterationItems` field, which is a collection of labels. Each item in the collection has a `label` and `value` attribute.

```
<aura:component model="java://org.auraframework.docs.LabelTestModel">
    <aura:iteration items="{!m.iterationItems}" var="item">
        <ui:inputText label="{!item.label}" value="{!item.value}" aura:id="iterate"/>
    </aura:iteration>
</aura:component>
```

Separating Labels from Input Components

For design reasons, you might want a significant visual separation of an HTML `<label>` tag from its corresponding form element. In such a scenario, use the `ui:label` component to bind the label to the input component using the local ID, `aura:id`, of the input component.

This code sample shows how to bind a label using the `aura:id` of an input component.

```
<ui:label labelDisplay="false" for="myInput" label="My Input Text" />
<!-- HTML markup separating the label from the input component -->
<ui:inputText aura:id="myInput" value="Put your input here." />
```

To associate the `ui:label` tag with the input component, the `for` attribute in `ui:label` is set to the same value as the `aura:id` in the input component.

Note that setting `labelDisplay="false"` in `ui:label` hides the label from view but still exposes it to screen readers. For more information, refer to the `ui:label` component reference documentation.

SEE ALSO:

[Dynamically Populating Label Parameters](#)

[Dynamically Creating Labels](#)

[Supporting Accessibility](#)

[Java Models](#)

Dynamically Populating Label Parameters

The `aura:label` component accepts parameters, enabling you to dynamically populate placeholder values in labels.

The label component value attribute accepts one or more numbered parameters. This example substitutes the `{0}` parameter with an expression.

```
<aura:label value="{0} Members">
    {!v.numberOfMembers}
</aura:label>
```

This example shows the output and source of a label with a hard-coded expression value.

```
<aura:component>
    <aura:label value="Your balance is {0} points.">
        {!500}
    </aura:label>
</aura:component>
```

Using `$Label`

You can dynamically populate parameters in a label using the global value provider, `$Label`. For example, if you have a `MySection.MyLabel` label set to `{0} Members`, you can provide a value for the parameter when you reference the label in `aura:label`.

```
<aura:label value="{!$Label.MySection.MyLabel}">
    {!v.numberOfMembers}
</aura:label>
```

If the `v.numberOfMembers` expression evaluates to 5, the output will be:

```
5 Members
```

You can add as many parameters as you need. The parameters are numbered and are zero-based. For example, if you have three parameters, they will be named `{0}`, `{1}`, and `{2}`, and they will be substituted in the order they're specified.

This example shows the `MySection.MyLabel` label defined as `"{0} Members, {1} New Members, and {2} Guests"` in the label file.

```
<aura:label value="{!$Label.MySection.MyLabel}">
    {!v.numberOfMembers}
```

```

    {!v.numberofNewMembers}
    {!v.numberofGuests}
</aura:label>

```

Assuming that `{!v.numberofMembers}` evaluates to 5, `{!v.numberofNewMembers}` evaluates to 2, and `{!v.numberofGuests}` evaluates to 8, the output is:

```
5 Members, 2 New Members, and 8 Guests
```

You can specify a component as a parameter substitution value in the body of `aura:label`. This example shows how to include a link in a label by substituting the `{0}` parameter with the embedded `ui:outputURL` component. The `$Label.MySection.LinkLabel` label is defined as `Label` with `link: {0}`.

```

<aura:label value="{!$Label.MySection.LinkLabel}">
    <ui:outputURL value="http://www.salesforce.com" label="Test Link"/>
</aura:label>

```

This example is similar to the previous one except that the label value is hard-coded and doesn't use the label provider.

```

<aura:component>
    <aura:label value="Label with link: {0}">
        <ui:outputURL value="http://www.salesforce.com" label="Test Link"/>
    </aura:label>
</aura:component>

```

This is equivalent to embedding the HTML anchor tag:

```

<aura:label value="{!$Label.MySection.LinkLabel}">
    <a href="http://www.salesforce.com">Test Link</a>
</aura:label>

```

Embedding `aura:label` in Another Component

You can use an `aura:label` component with parameter substitutions as the label of another component. For example, you can use an `aura:label` component as the label of a `ui:button` component. Set the `labelDisplay` attribute to `false` so that the label attribute won't be rendered. The embedded label in `aura:label` is displayed instead.

This example embeds the label component from the previous example inside a `ui:button` component. The button label is taken from this embedded label component, which in turn contains an `ui:outputURL` component in its body for substituting a parameter with a link. `$Label.MySection.LinkLabel` is defined as `Label` with `link: {0}`.

```

<ui:button labelDisplay="false" label="Label for assistive text">
    <aura:label value="{!$Label.MySection.LinkLabel}">
        <ui:outputURL value="http://www.salesforce.com" label="Test Link"/>
    </aura:label>
</ui:button>

```

This example uses a hard-coded label value rather than a value from the label provider.

```

<aura:component>
    <ui:button labelDisplay="false" label="Label for assistive text">
        <aura:label value="Label with link: {0}">
            <ui:outputURL value="http://www.salesforce.com" label="Test Link"/>
        </aura:label>
    </ui:button>
</aura:component>

```

Dynamically Creating Labels

You can dynamically create labels in JavaScript code. This can be useful when you need to use a label that is not known until runtime when it's dynamically generated.

This example dynamically constructs the label value by calling `$A.get()` and updates a `dynamicLabel` attribute in a component with the retrieved label.

Component source

```
<aura:component render="client">
  <aura:attribute name="dynamicLabel" type="String"/>
  <div>Dynamic label update: {!v.dynamicLabel}</div>
  <ui:button press="{!c.getLabel}" label="Get Label" />
</aura:component>
```

Client-side controller source

```
((
  getLabel: function(cmp, event) {
    // Demonstrating dynamic construction of a label string.
    // This example is contrived but partialLabel could be
    // dynamically constructed in your code.
    var partialLabel = "task_mode_today";
    $A.get("$Label" + ".Related_Lists." + partialLabel,
      function(retrievedLabel) {
        if (cmp.isValid()) {
          cmp.set("v.dynamicLabel", retrievedLabel);
        }
      }
    );
  }
})
```

If the label value isn't already known on the client, then the label is fetched asynchronously from the server. The callback function parameter is called when the server request completes. The retrieved label is passed into the callback function.

The callback in this example updates the `dynamicLabel` attribute with the label value, which triggers rerendering of the component.

Note that it's important in this example that the `$Label` value is dynamically concatenated in the JavaScript code. If you used a static label, such as `$Label.Related_Lists.task_mode_today`, instead, the framework would have simply pre-fetched the value for the static label and sent it to the client.

Rendering Dynamic Labels

If the label is already known on the client, `$A.get()` displays the label. If the value is not known, `PROD` mode displays an empty placeholder and all other modes return a placeholder containing the label expression. The placeholder is replaced with the label value when it's retrieved from the server.

Testing Dynamic Labels

To inspect the label value after it is retrieved, use the callback function parameter.

```
$A.get("$Label" + ".Related_Lists" + ".task_mode_today",
    function(res) {
        $A.test.assertEquals("Today", res, "Failed: Wrong label value in callback");
    }
);
```

Dynamically Replacing Label Parameters

You can use the callback function parameter to replace placeholder parameters in a label. For example, if the `$Label.Balance.Points` label returns `Your balance is {0} points`, you can replace the `{0}` placeholder with a dynamic value in the callback function. For example:

```
$A.get("$Label" + ".Balance" + ".Points",
    function(res) {
        // assuming actualPoints was set earlier in the code
        var balancePoints = res.replace('{0}', actualPoints);
        if (cmp.isValid()) {
            cmp.set("v.repositoryLabel", balancePoints);
        }
    }
);
```

Avoiding a Server Roundtrip

If your component uses a known set of dynamically constructed labels, you can avoid a server roundtrip for the labels by adding a reference to the labels in a JavaScript resource. The framework sends these labels to the client when the component is requested. For example, if your component dynamically generates `$Label.Related_Lists.task_mode_today` and `$Label.Related_Lists.task_mode_tomorrow` label keys, you can add references to the labels in a comment in a JavaScript resource, such as a client-side controller or helper.

```
// hints to ensure labels are preloaded
// $Label.Related_Lists.task_mode_today
// $Label.Related_Lists.task_mode_tomorrow
```

SEE ALSO:

[Using JavaScript](#)

[Input Component Labels](#)

[Dynamically Populating Label Parameters](#)

[Customizing your Label Implementation](#)

[Modes Reference](#)

Customizing your Label Implementation

You can customize where your app reads labels from by overriding the default label adapter. Your label adapter implementation encapsulates the details of finding and returning labels defined outside the application code. Typically, labels are defined separately from the source code to make localization of labels easier.

To provide a label adapter implementation, implement the `LocalizationAdapter` interface with the following two methods.

```
public class MyLocalizationAdapterImpl implements LocalizationAdapter {

    @Override
    public String getLabel(String section, String name, Object... params) {
        // Return specified label.
    }

    @Override
    public boolean labelExists(String section, String name) {
        // Return true if the label exists; otherwise false.
    }

}
```

The `getLabel` method contains the implementation for finding the specified label and returning it. Here is a description of its parameters:

Parameter	Description
String <i>section</i>	The section in the label definition file where the label is defined. This assumes your label name has two parts (section.name). This parameter can be <code>null</code> depending on your label system implementation.
String <i>name</i>	The label name.
Object <i>params</i>	A list of parameter values for substitution on the server. This parameter can be <code>null</code> if parameter substitution is done on the client.

The `labelExists` method indicates whether the specified label is defined or not. Its method parameters are identical to the first two parameters for `getLabel`.

SEE ALSO:

[Plugging in Custom Code with Adapters](#)

[Input Component Labels](#)

[Dynamically Populating Label Parameters](#)

Setting Label Values via a Parent Attribute

Setting label values via a parent attribute is useful if you want control over labels in child components.

Let's say that you have a container component, which contains another component, `inner.comp`. You want to set a label value in `inner.comp` via an attribute on the container component. This can be done by specifying the attribute type and default value. You must set a default value in the parent attribute if you are setting a label on an inner component, as shown in the following example.

This is the container component, which contains a default value `My Label` for the `_label` attribute .

```
<aura:component>
    <aura:attribute name="_label"
                    type="String"
                    default="My Label"/>
    <ui:button label="Set Label" aura:id="button1" press="{!c.setLabel}"/>
    <auradocs:inner aura:id="inner" label="{!v._label}"/>
</aura:component>
```

This `inner` component contains a text area component and a `label` attribute that's set by the container component.

```
<aura:component>
    <aura:attribute name="label" type="String"/>
    <ui:inputTextarea aura:id="textarea"
                    label="{!v.label}"/>
</aura:component>
```

This client-side controller action updates the label value.

```
((
    setLabel: function(cmp) {
        cmp.set("v._label", 'new label');
    }
}))
```

When the component is initialized, you'll see a button and a text area with the label `My Label`. When the button in the container component is clicked, the `setLabel` action updates the label value in the `inner` component. This action finds the `label` attribute and sets its value to `new label`.

SEE ALSO:

[Input Component Labels](#)

[Component Attributes](#)

CHAPTER 7 Supporting Accessibility

In this chapter ...

- [Accessibility Considerations](#)
- [Button Labels](#)
- [Carousels](#)
- [Help and Error Messages](#)
- [Audio Messages](#)
- [Forms, Fields, and Labels](#)
- [Images](#)
- [Events](#)
- [Dialog Overlays](#)
- [Menus](#)

Components are created with accessibility in mind. This is also true for components that extend these components.

In general, you can think of the components as either basic or complex, interactive components.

Basic Components

- `ui:image` — for images and icons
- `ui:input` — for input elements such as text fields and date fields
- `ui:button` — for input elements such as push buttons, radio buttons, and checkboxes

Complex, Interactive Components

- `ui:autocomplete` — for autocompleting dropdowns
- `ui:carousel` — for carousel interactions
- `ui:tabset` — for tab and tab panel interactions
- `ui:datePicker` — for calendar pickers
- `ui:panelDialog` — for modal and non-modal overlays
- `ui:menu` — for menus, dropdowns, and muttons
- `ui:message` — for displaying page updates to users and updating screen readers

When customizing these components or their sub-components, be careful in preserving code that ensures accessibility, such as the `aria` attributes. See [UI Components](#) for components you can use in your apps.

Accessibility Testing

To check that a component's HTML output is compliant with our accessibility validation, run `$A.test.assertAccessible()`. You can also run `$A.devToolService.checkAccessibility()` on a browser console. This tool checks the rendered DOM elements to make sure that they pass Salesforce's accessibility validation. Examples of this include image tags requiring an `alt` attribute, active panels correctly setting the `aria-hidden` attribute, and `input`, `select`, and `textarea` tags having associated labels.

When using the tool, there are two outcomes: pass or fail. If the tool does not find any accessibility exceptions, it returns an empty string. When the tool does find accessibility exceptions, it will include the accessibility rule that failed, the erroneous tag, and a stacktrace of where it was found in the code.

To use these tests, you must have the Aura Framework loaded. The tests can be used in the console (`$A.devToolService.checkAccessibility()`), JSTEST (`$A.test.assertAccessible()`), or in a WebDriver test (`auraTestingUtil.assertAccessible()`).

The tests look for these issues:

- Images without the `alt` attribute
- Anchor element without textual content
- `input` elements without an associated label
- Radio button groups not in a `fieldset` tag
- `iframe` or `frame` elements with empty `title` attribute
- `fieldset` element without a `legend`
- `th` element without a `scope` attribute
- `head` element with an empty `title` attribute
- Headings (`H1`, `H2`, etc.) increasing by more than one level at a time
- CSS color contrast ratio between text and background less than 4.5:1

Since Aura is a single page javascript application, the person writing the test will have to make sure to re-test when the DOM changes. The person using the tool should place a check after the DOM has changed to ensure greater accessibility validation coverage.

The sections below include more information specific to different types of components.

Accessibility Considerations

Accessible software and assistive technology enable users with disabilities to use and interact with the products you build. Aura components are created according to W3C specifications so that they work with common assistive technologies. While we always recommend that you follow the [WCAG Guidelines](#) for accessibility when developing with Aura, this guide explains the accessibility features that you can leverage when using components in the `ui` namespace.

SEE ALSO:

[Supporting Accessibility](#)

[Components](#)

[Handling Events with Client-Side Controllers](#)

Button Labels

Buttons may be designed to appear with just text, an image and text, or an image without text. To create an accessible button, use `ui:button` and set a textual label using the `label` attribute. To hide the label from view, set `labelDisplay="false"`. The text is available to assistive technologies, but not visible on screen.

```
<ui:button label="Search"
iconImgSrc="/auraFW/resources/aura/images/search.png"/>
labelDisplay="false"/>
```

When using `ui:button`, assign a non-empty string to `label` attribute. If it's an icon only button, use `labelDisplay` in `ui:button` to hide the label text. These examples show how a `ui:button` should render:

```
<!-- Good: using alt attribute to provide a invisible label -->
<button>
  
</button>
```

```
<!-- Good: using span/assistiveText to hide the label visually, but show it to screen
readers -->
<button>
  ::before
    <span class="assistiveText">Search</span>
</button>
```

SEE ALSO:

[Buttons](#)

Carousels

The `ui:carousel` component displays a list of items horizontally where users can swipe through the list or click through the page indicators.

If your code failed, check to make sure the page indicators are visible. If `visible="false"` is set on the `ui:carouselPageIndicatorItem`, the page indicators will be hidden from view. Similarly, setting `continuousFlow="true"` on `ui:carousel` hides the page indicators from view.

Help and Error Messages

Use the `ariaDescribedby` attribute to associate the help text or error message with a particular field.

```
<ui:inputText label="Contact Name" labelPosition="top" ariaDescribedby="contact" />
<ui:outputText aura:id="contact" value="This is an example of a help text." />
```

However, if you want to use the input component to create and handle the `ui:inputDefaultError` component, the error messages will automatically get the `ariaDescribedby` attribute. If, however, you want to manually manage the action, you will need to make the connection between the `ui:inputDefaultError` component and the associated output.

If your code failed, check to see if `ariaDescribedby` is missing. Your component should render like this example:

```
<!-- Good: aria-describedby is used to associate error message -->
<label for="fname">Contact name</label>
<input name="" type="text" id="fname" aria-describedby="msgid">
<ul class="uiInputDefaultError" id="msgid">
  <li>Please enter the contact name</li>
</ul>
```

SEE ALSO:

[Validating Fields](#)

Audio Messages

To convey audio notifications, use the `ui:message` component, which has `role="alert"` set on the component by default. The `"alert"` aria role will take any text inside the div and read it out loud to screen readers without any additional action by the user.

```
<ui:message title="Error" severity="error" closable="true">
  This is an error message.
</ui:message>
```

Forms, Fields, and Labels

Input components are designed to make it easy to assign labels to form fields. Labels build a programmatic relationship between a form field and its textual label. You can assign a label in two ways. Use the `label` attribute on a component that extends `ui:input` or use the `ui:label` component and bind it to the corresponding input component. When using a placeholder in an input component, set the `label` attribute for accessibility.

Use the input components that extend `ui:input`, except when `type="file"`. For example, use `ui:inputTextarea` in preference to the `<textarea>` tag for multi-line text input or the `ui:inputSelect` component in preference to the `<select>` tag.

```
<ui:inputText label="Search" labelPosition="hidden" placeholder="Search" />
```

Designs often include form elements with placeholder text, but no visible label. A label is required for accessibility and can be hidden visually. Set `labelDisplay="false"` to hide it from view but make the component accessible.

```
<ui:label labelDisplay="false" for="myInput" label="My Input Text" />
<ui:inputText aura:id="myInput" value="Put your input here." />
```

If your code failed, check the label element during component rendering. A label element should have the `for` attribute and match the value of input control id attribute, OR the label should be wrapped around an input. Input controls include `<input>`, `<textarea>`, and `<select>`.

```
<!-- Good: using label/for= -->
<label for="fullname">Enter your full name:</label>
<input type="text" id="fullname" />

<!-- Good: --using implicit label>
<label>Enter your full name:
  <input type="text" id="fullname"/>
</label>
```

SEE ALSO:

[Using Labels](#)

Images

For an image to be accessible, set an appropriate alternative text attribute. If your image is informational, or actionable as part of a hyperlink, set the `alt` attribute to a descriptive alternative text. If the image is purely decorative, set `imageType="decorative"`. This generates a null `alt` attribute in the `img` tag.

```
<ui:image src="s.gif" imageType="informational" alt="Open Menu">
```

```
<ui:image src="s.gif" imageType="decorative">
```

When displaying an informational or actionable image via CSS, include the `assistiveText` class to provide an appropriate alternative text.

```
<a class="like">
  <span class="assistiveText">Like</span>
</a>
```

IN THIS SECTION:

[Using Images](#)

Using Images

To display images, use the `ui:image` component. The `ui:image` component automates common usages of the HTML `` tag, such as `href` linking and other attributes. Additionally, include the `imageType` attribute to show if the image is informational or decorative. Use the `title` attribute for tooltips, especially for icons.

Informational Images

Informational images can provide information that may not be available in the text, such as a Like or Follow image. They are actionable and can stand alone in a button or hyperlink. Include the `alt` tag to specify alternate text for the image, which is helpful if the user has no access to the image.

```
<ui:image src="follow.png" imageType="informational" alt="follow" />
```

If you use CSS to display an informational image, you must provide assistive text that will be put into the DOM, by using the `assistiveText` class.

```
<div class="Following">
  <span class="assistiveText">Following</span>
</div>
```

Decorative Images

Decorative images are images that can be removed without affecting the logic or content of the page. You don't need to specify assistive text for decorative images.

```
<ui:image src="decoration.png" imageType="decorative" />
```

Code Samples

If your code failed, check to make sure you used the `alt` tag and the `assistiveText` class correctly.

Informational image code example:

```
alt tag:
<ui:image src="follow.png" imageType="informational" alt="follow" />
assistiveText class:
<div class="Following">
  <span class="assistiveText">Following</span>
</div>
```

Decorative image code example:

```
<ui:image src="decoration.png" imageType="decorative" />
```

SEE ALSO:

[Accessibility Considerations](#)

Events

Although you can attach an `onclick` event to any type of element, for accessibility, consider only applying this event to elements that are actionable in HTML by default, such as `<a>`, `<button>`, or `<input>` tags in component markup. You can use an `onclick` event on a `<div>` tag to prevent event bubbling of a click.

Dialog Overlays

The `ui:panelDialog` component creates an overlay that lets users access additional information without leaving the current page. Modal overlay requires the user to take an action or cancel the overlay to go back to the original page. Non-modal overlays offer useful information but can be ignored by users.

To create a modal overlay, use `isModal` boolean. Set to `true`, the overlay is modal and keyboard focus is locked inside. Set to `false`, the overlay is non-modal and users can just tab through.

The `ui:panelDialog` needs to have a title to meet accessibility standards, but it doesn't have to be visible. Use `titleDisplay` to hide the title, if desired. Also, if `isModal="true"`, then `autoFocus` must be also true for the component to be accessible.

Menus

A menu is a drop-down list with a trigger that controls its visibility. You must provide the trigger and list of menu items. The drop-down menu and its menu items are hidden by default. You can change this by setting the `visible` attribute on the `ui:menuList` component to `true`. The menu items are shown only when you click the `ui:menuTriggerLink` component.

This example code creates a menu with several items:

```
<ui:menu>
  <ui:menuTriggerLink aura:id="trigger" label="Opportunity Status"/>
  <ui:menuList class="actionMenu" aura:id="actionMenu">
    <ui:actionMenuItem aura:id="item2" label="Open"
click="{!c.updateTriggerLabel}"/>
    <ui:actionMenuItem aura:id="item3" label="Closed"
click="{!c.updateTriggerLabel}"/>
    <ui:actionMenuItem aura:id="item4" label="Closed Won"
click="{!c.updateTriggerLabel}"/>
  </ui:menuList>
</ui:menu>
```

Different menus achieve different goals. Make sure you use the right menu for the desired behavior. The three types of menus are:

Actions

Use the `ui:actionMenuItem` for items that create an action, like print, new, or save.

Radio button

If you want users to pick only one from a list several items, use `ui:radioMenuItem`.

Checkbox style

If users can pick multiple items from a list of several items, use `ui:checkboxMenuItem`. Checkboxes can also be used to turn one item on or off.

CHAPTER 8 Resolving Accessibility Errors

Accessibility tests validate generated HTML markup and may return an error code followed by a message to help you resolve those errors.

The following errors flag accessibility issues in your components. Resolve these errors to ensure that your components are accessible.

[A11Y_DOM_01] All image tags require the presence of the alt attribute

Informational images must have a description set on its `alt` attribute. If the image is decorative, set `alt=""`. For more information, see [Images](#) on page 82.

```
<!-- Informational image -->

```

[A11Y_DOM_02] Labels are required for all input controls

A label element should have a `for` attribute and match the value of the `id` attribute on the input control, or the label should be wrapped around the input. Input controls include `<input>`, `<textarea>` and `<select>`. For more information, see [Forms, Fields, and Labels](#) on page 81.

```
<!-- Method 1: Use label/for -->
<label for="fullname">Enter your full name:</label>
<input type="text" id="fullname"/>

<!-- Method 2: Use an implicit label-->
<label>Enter your full name:
  <input type="text" id="fullname"/>
</label>
```

[A11Y_DOM_03] Buttons must have non-empty text labels

When using `ui:button`, assign a non-empty string to the `label` attribute. For an icon-only button, use `labelDisplay` in `ui:button` to hide the label text. For more information, see [Button Labels](#) on page 80.

```
<!-- Method 1: Use the alt attribute to provide a hidden label -->
<button>
  
</button>

<!-- Method 2: Use a span tag with assistiveText class to hide the
label visually -->
<button>
  <span class="assistiveText">Enter site</span>
</button>
```

[A11Y_DOM_04] Links must have non-empty text content

For a graphical link, use a `ui:image` instead. To include hidden link text, use a `span` tag with `assistiveText` class. For buttons, use the `ui:button` component.

```
<!-- Method 1: Use an img tag with the alt attribute to provide
link text -->
<a href="routes.html">
  
</a>

<!-- Method 2: Use a span tag with assistiveText class to provide
link text -->
<a href="javascript:void(0);">
  <span class="assistiveText">Toggle Notifications</span>
  <div class="notificationCounter"></div>
</a>
```

[A11Y_DOM_05] Text color contrast ratio must meet the minimum requirement

Small text must have a contrast ratio of not less than 4.5:1. Small text includes those whose font size are:

- Smaller than 19px bold or semibold
- Smaller than 24px normal

Large text must have a contrast ratio of not less than 3.0:1. Large text includes those whose font size are:

- At least 19px bold or semibold
- At least 24px normal

A good color contrast ratio means that the foreground and background color provides enough contrast when viewed by a user who might have impaired vision or when viewed on a black and white screen. You can install Accessibility Developer Tools on your Google Chrome browser or use the [WebAim Color Contrast Checker tool](#).

[A11Y_DOM_06] Each frame and iframe element must have a non-empty title attribute

If using an `iframe` element, include a descriptive `title` attribute.

```
<iframe src="banner-ad.html" id="testiframe" name="testiframe"
title="Advertisement">
  <a href="banner-ad.html">Advertisement</a>
</iframe>
```

[A11Y_DOM_07] The head section must have a non-empty title element

In the head element, include a descriptive `title` tag.

```
<head>
  <title>Welcome</title>
</head>
```

[A11Y_DOM_08] Data table cells must be associated with data table headers

Use the `scope` attribute or use both the `id` and `header` attributes.

```
<!-- Method 1: Use the scope attribute -->
<table border="1"><caption>Contact Information</caption>
  <tr>
```



```

        <th scope="col">Name</th>
        <th scope="col">Department</th>
    </tr>
    <tr>
        <td>admin</td>
        <td>R&D</td>
    </tr>
</table>

<!-- Method 2: Use the id and headers attributes -->
<table border="1">
    <tr>
        <th id="e1">First Name</th>
        <th id="e2">Last Name</th>
        <th id="e3">Department</th>
    </tr>
    <tr>
        <td headers="e1">John</td>
        <td headers="e2">Smith</td>
        <td headers="e3">R&D</td>
    </tr>
</table>

```

[A11Y_DOM_09] Fieldset must have a legend element

Include a descriptive legend in your `fieldset` element.

```

<fieldset>
    <legend>Choose yes or no</legend>
</fieldset>

```

[A11Y_DOM_10] Related radio buttons or checkboxes must be grouped with a fieldset

Nest your radio buttons and checkboxes in a `fieldset` tag.

```

<fieldset>
    <legend>Choose yes or no</legend>
    <input type="radio" name="yes" id="yesid" value="yes"/>
    <label for="yesid">yes</label>
    <input type="radio" name="no" id="noid" value="no"/>
    <label for="noid">no</label>
</fieldset>

```

[A11Y_DOM_11] Headings should be properly nested

Headings should increase no more than one level each time, and can start at any level.

```

<h2>Profile</h2>
<h3>Profile Details</h3>
<h2>Interests</h2>

```

[A11Y_DOM_12] Base and top panels should have proper aria-hidden properties

The `aria-hidden` attribute indicates whether an element is hidden or not, and can be set to `true` or `false` respectively.

```

<!-- aria-hidden of base panel is false if top panel is not active
-->
<section class="stage panelSlide forceAccess"
aria-hidden="false"></div>

```

```
<div class="panel panelOverlay" aria-hidden="true"></div>

<!-- aria-hidden of base panel is true if there is active top panel
-->
<section class="stage panelSlide forceAccess"
aria-hidden="true"></div>
<div class="panel panelOverlay active" aria-hidden="false"></div>
```

[A11Y_DOM_13] Aria-describedby must be used to associate error message with input control

The `aria-describedby` attribute indicates the IDs of the elements that describe the object, and can be used to associate static text with groups of elements. For more information, see [Help and Error Messages](#) on page 81.

```
<label for="fname">First name</label>
<input name="firstname" type="text" id="fname"
aria-describedby="msgid">
<ul class="uiInputDefaultError" id="msgid">
```

COMMUNICATING WITH EVENTS

CHAPTER 9 Events

In this chapter ...

- [Handling Events with Client-Side Controllers](#)
- [Component Events](#)
- [Application Events](#)
- [Event Handling Lifecycle](#)
- [Advanced Events Example](#)
- [Firing Aura Events from Non-Aura Code](#)
- [Events Best Practices](#)
- [Events Fired During the Rendering Lifecycle](#)

If you have ever developed with JavaScript or Java Swing, you should be familiar with the idea of event-driven programming. You write handlers that respond to interface events as they occur. The events may or may not have been triggered by user interaction.

In Aura, events are fired from JavaScript controller actions. Events can contain attributes that can be set before the event is fired and read when the event is handled.

Events are declared by the `aura:event` tag in a `.evt` file, and they can have one of two types: component or application. Application and component events are declared in separate files, for example, `drawApp/pickBrushComp/pickBrushComp.evt` and `drawApp/pickBrushApp/pickBrushApp.evt`. The event type is set by either `type="COMPONENT"` or `type="APPLICATION"` in the `aura:event` tag.

Handling Events with Client-Side Controllers

A client-side controller handles events within a component. It's a JavaScript file that defines the functions for all of the component's actions.

Each action function takes in three parameters: the component to which the controller belongs, the event that the action is handling, and the helper if it's used. Client-side controllers are surrounded by brackets and curly braces to denote a JSON object containing a map of name-value pairs.

Creating a Client-Side Controller

A client-side controller is part of the component bundle. It is auto-wired via the naming convention, `componentNameController.js`.

To reuse a client-side controller from another component, use the `controller` system attribute in `aura:component`. For example, this component uses the auto-wired client-side controller for `docsample.sampleComponent` in `docsample/sampleComponent/sampleComponentController.js`.

```
<aura:component
    controller="js://docsample.sampleComponent">
    ...
</aura:component>
```

Calling Client-Side Controller Actions

Let's start by looking at events on different implementations of an HTML tag. The following example component creates three different buttons, of which only the last two work properly. Clicking on these buttons updates the `text` component attribute with the specified values. `target.get("v.label")` refers to the `label` attribute value on the button.

Component source

```
<aura:component>
    <aura:attribute name="text" type="String" default="Just a string. Waiting for change."/>

    <input type="button" value="Flawed HTML Button" onclick="alert('this will not work')"/>

    <br/>
    <input type="button" value="Hybrid HTML Button" onclick="{!c.handleClick}"/>
    <br/>
    <ui:button label="Framework Button" press="{!c.handleClick}"/>
    <br/>
    {!v.text}
</aura:component>
```

Client-side controller source

```
{
    handleClick : function(component, event) {
        var attributeValue = component.get("v.text");
        aura.log("current text: " + attributeValue);

        var target;
        if (event.getSource) {
```

```

        // handling a framework component event
        target = event.getSource(); // this is a Component object
        component.set("v.text", target.get("v.label"));
    } else {
        // handling a native browser event
        target = event.target.value; // this is a DOM element
        component.set("v.text", event.target.value);
    }
}
}

```

Any browser DOM element event starting with `on`, such as `onclick` or `onkeypress`, can be wired to a controller action. You can only wire browser events to controller actions. Arbitrary JavaScript in the component is ignored.

If you know some JavaScript, you might be tempted to write something like the first "Flawed" button because you know that HTML tags are first-class citizens in the framework. However, the "Flawed" button won't work as the framework has its own event system. DOM events are mapped to Aura events, since HTML tags are mapped to Aura components.

Handling Framework Events

Handle framework events using actions in client-side component controllers. Framework events for common mouse and keyboard interactions are available with out-of-the-box components. When you extend these components, you have access to these events as well. For example, if you extend the `ui:input` component, you have access to its events, such as `mouseover`, `cut`, and `copy`.

Let's look at the `onclick` attribute in the "Hybrid" button, which invokes the `handleClick` action in the controller. The "Framework" button uses the same syntax with the `press` attribute in the `<ui:button>` component.

In this simple scenario, there is little functional difference between working with the "Framework" button or the "Hybrid" HTML button. However, components are designed with accessibility in mind so users with disabilities or those who use assistive technologies can also use your app. When you start building more complex components, the reusable out-of-the-box components can simplify your job by handling some of the plumbing that you would otherwise have to create yourself. Also, these components are secure and optimized for performance.

Accessing Component Attributes

In the `handleClick` function, notice that the first argument to every action is the component to which the controller belongs. One of the most common things you'll want to do with this component is look at and change its attribute values.

`component.get("v.attributeName")` returns the value of the `attributeName` attribute. The `aura.log()` utility function attempts to find a browser console and logs the attribute value to it.

Invoking Another Action in the Controller

To call an action method from another method, use a helper function and invoke it using `helper.someFunction(component)`. A helper resource contains functions that can be reused by your JavaScript code in the component bundle.

SEE ALSO:

[Sharing JavaScript Code in a Component Bundle](#)


[Event Handling Lifecycle](#)

[Creating Server-Side Logic with Controllers](#)

Component Events

A component event can be handled by a component itself or by a component that instantiates or contains the component.



 **Note:** Alternatively, use `aura:method` to call a method in a component's client-side controller, instead of firing and handling a component event.

Create Custom Component Event

You can create custom component events using the `<aura:event>` tag in a `.evt` resource. Events can contain attributes that can be set before the event is fired and read when the event is handled.

Use `type="COMPONENT"` in the `<aura:event>` tag for a component event. For example, this is a `docsample:compEvent` component event with one `message` attribute.

```
<!--docsample:compEvent-->
<aura:event type="COMPONENT">
  <!-- add aura:attribute tags to define event shape.
       One sample attribute here -->
  <aura:attribute name="message" type="String"/>
</aura:event>
```

The component that handles an event can retrieve the event data. To retrieve the attribute in this event, call `event.getParam("message")` in the handler's client-side controller.

Register Component Event

A component registers that it may fire an event by using `<aura:registerEvent>` in its markup. For example:

```
<aura:registerEvent name="sampleComponentEvent" type="docsample:compEvent"/>
```

We'll see how the value of the `name` attribute is used for firing and handling events.

Fire Component Event

To get a reference to a component event in JavaScript, use `getEvent("evtName")` where `evtName` matches the `name` attribute in `<aura:registerEvent>`. Use `fire()` to fire the event from an instance of a component. For example, in an action function in a client-side controller:

```
var compEvent = cmp.getEvent("sampleComponentEvent");
// set some data for the event (also known as event shape)
// compEvent.setParams(...);
compEvent.fire();
```

Component Handling Its Own Event

A component can handle its own event by using the `aura:handler` tag in its markup.

The `action` attribute of `<aura:handler>` sets the client-side controller action to handle the event. For example:

```
<aura:registerEvent name="sampleComponentEvent" type="docsample:compEvent"/>
<aura:handler name="sampleComponentEvent" action="{!c.handleSampleEvent}"/>
```



Note: The `name` attributes in `<aura:registerEvent>` and `<aura:handler>` must match, since each event is defined by its name.

Handle Component Event of Instantiated Component

The component that registers an event declares the `name` attribute of the event. For example, an `<docsample:eventsNotifier>` component contains a `<aura:registerEvent>` tag.

```
<aura:registerEvent name="sampleComponentEvent" type="docsample:compEvent"/>
```

When you instantiate `<docsample:eventsNotifier>` in another component, use the value of the `name` attribute from the `<aura:registerEvent>` tag to register the handler. For example, if an `<docsample:eventsHandler>` component includes `<docsample:eventsNotifier>` in its markup, `eventsHandler` instantiates `eventsNotifier` and can handle any events thrown by `eventsNotifier`. Here's how `<docsample:eventsHandler>` instantiates `<docsample:eventsNotifier>`:

```
<docsample:eventsNotifier sampleComponentEvent="{!c.handleComponentEventFired}"/>
```

Note how `sampleComponentEvent` matches the value of the `name` attribute in the `<aura:registerEvent>` tag in `<docsample:eventsNotifier>`.

Handle Component Event in a Child Component

A child component that extends another component can also handle events fired by the super component. The child component automatically inherits event handlers from its super component.

Handle Component Event Dynamically

A component can have its handler bound dynamically via JavaScript. This is useful if a component is created in JavaScript on the client-side. See [Dynamically Adding Event Handlers](#) on page 141.

Get the Source of a Component Event

Use `evt.getSource()` in JavaScript to find out which component fired the component event, where `evt` is a reference to the event.

SEE ALSO:

[Application Events](#)

[Handling Events with Client-Side Controllers](#)

[Advanced Events Example](#)

[What is Inherited?](#)

[Calling Component Methods](#)

Component Event Example

Here's a simple use case of using a component event to update an attribute in another component.

1. A user clicks a button in the notifier component, `ceNotifier.cmp`.
2. The client-side controller for `ceNotifier.cmp` sets a message in a component event and fires the event.
3. The handler component, `ceHandler.cmp`, contains the notifier component, and handles the fired event.
4. The client-side controller for `ceHandler.cmp` sets an attribute in `ceHandler.cmp` based on the data sent in the event.

The event and components in this example are in a `docsample` namespace. There is nothing special about this namespace but it's referenced in the code in a few places. Change the code to use a different namespace if you prefer.

Component Event

The `ceEvent.evt` component event has one attribute. We'll use this attribute to pass some data in the event when it's fired.

```
<!--docsample:ceEvent-->
<aura:event type="COMPONENT">
  <aura:attribute name="message" type="String"/>
</aura:event>
```

Notifier Component

The `ceNotifier.cmp` component uses `aura:registerEvent` to declare that it may fire the component event.

The button in the component contains a `press` browser event that is wired to the `fireComponentEvent` action in the client-side controller. The action is invoked when you click the button.

```
<!--docsample:ceNotifier-->
<aura:component>
  <aura:registerEvent name="cmpEvent" type="docsample:ceEvent"/>

  <h1>Simple Component Event Sample</h1>
  <p><ui:button
    label="Click here to fire a component event"
    press="{!c.fireComponentEvent}" />
  </p>
</aura:component>
```


ceNotifierController.js

The client-side controller gets an instance of the event by calling `cmp.getEvent("cmpEvent")`, where `cmpEvent` matches the value of the `name` attribute in the `<aura:registerEvent>` tag in the component markup. The controller sets the `message` attribute of the event and fires the event.

```
{
  fireComponentEvent : function(cmp, event) {
    // Get the component event by using the
    // name value from aura:registerEvent
    var cmpEvent = cmp.getEvent("cmpEvent");
    cmpEvent.setParams({
      "message" : "A component event fired me. " +
        "It all happened so fast. Now, I'm here!" });
    cmpEvent.fire();
  }
}
```

Handler Component

The `ceHandler.cmp` handler component contains the `<docsample:ceNotifier>` component and uses the value of the `name` attribute, `cmpEvent`, from the `<aura:registerEvent>` tag in `<docsample:ceNotifier>` to register the handler. When the event is fired, the `handleComponentEvent` action in the client-side controller of the handler component is invoked.

```
<!--docsample:ceHandler-->
<aura:component>
  <aura:attribute name="messageFromEvent" type="String"/>
  <aura:attribute name="numEvents" type="Integer" default="0"/>

  <!-- handler contains the notifier component
  Note that cmpEvent is the value of the name attribute in aura:registerEvent
  in ceNotifier.cmp -->
  <docsample:ceNotifier cmpEvent="{!c.handleComponentEvent}"/>

  <p>{!v.messageFromEvent}</p>
  <p>Number of events: {!v.numEvents}</p>

</aura:component>
```

ceHandlerController.js

The controller retrieves the data sent in the event and uses it to update the `messageFromEvent` attribute in the handler component.

```
{
  handleComponentEvent : function(cmp, event) {
    var message = event.getParam("message");

    // set the handler attributes based on event data
    cmp.set("v.messageFromEvent", message);
    var numEventsHandled = parseInt(cmp.get("v.numEvents")) + 1;
    cmp.set("v.numEvents", numEventsHandled);
  }
}
```

Put It All Together

You can test this code by adding the resources to a sample application and navigating to the handler component. For example, if you have a `docsample` application, navigate to:

`http://localhost:<port>/docsample/ceHandler.cmp.`

If you want to access data on the server, you could extend this example to call a server-side controller from the handler's client-side controller.

SEE ALSO:

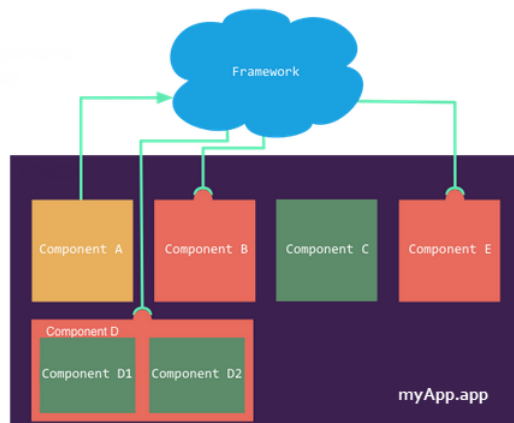
[Component Events](#)

[Creating Server-Side Logic with Controllers](#)

[Application Event Example](#)

Application Events

Application events follow a traditional publish-subscribe model. An application event is fired from an instance of a component. All components that provide a handler for the event are notified.



Create Custom Application Event

You can create custom application events using the `<aura:event>` tag in a `.evt` resource. Events can contain attributes that can be set before the event is fired and read when the event is handled.

Use `type="APPLICATION"` in the `<aura:event>` tag for an application event. For example, this is a `docsample:appEvent` application event with one `message` attribute.

```
<!--docsample:appEvent-->
<aura:event type="APPLICATION">
    <!-- add aura:attribute tags to define event shape.
    One sample attribute here -->
    <aura:attribute name="message" type="String"/>
</aura:event>
```

The component that handles an event can retrieve the event data. To retrieve the attribute in this event, call `event.getParam("message")` in the handler's client-side controller.

Register Application Event

A component registers that it may fire an application event by using `<aura:registerEvent>` in its markup. Note that the `name` attribute is required but not used for application events. The `name` attribute is only relevant for component events. This example uses `name="appEvent"` but the value is not used anywhere.

```
<aura:registerEvent name="appEvent" type="docsample:appEvent"/>
```

Fire Application Event

Use `$A.get("e.myNamespace:myAppEvent")` in JavaScript to get an instance of the `myAppEvent` event in the `myNamespace` namespace. Use `fire()` to fire the event.

```
var appEvent = $A.get("e.docsample:appEvent");
// set some data for the event (also known as event shape)
//appEvent.setParams({ ... });
appEvent.fire();
```

Handle Application Event

Use `<aura:handler>` in the markup of the handler component. The `action` attribute of `<aura:handler>` sets the client-side controller action to handle the event. For example:

```
<aura:handler event="docsample:appEvent" action="{!c.handleApplicationEvent}"/>
```

When the event is fired, the `handleApplicationEvent` client-side controller action is called.

Get the Source of an Application Event

Note that `evt.getSource()` doesn't work for application events. It only works for component events. A component event is usually fired by code like `cmp.getEvent('myEvt').fire()` so it's obvious who fired the event. However, it's relatively opaque which component fired an application event. It's fired by code like `$A.getEvt('myEvt').fire()`. If you need to find the source of an application event, you could use `evt.setParams()` to set the source component in the event data before firing it. For example, `evt.setParams("source" : sourceCmp)`, where `sourceCmp` is a reference to the source component.

Events Fired on App Rendering

Several events are fired when an app is rendering. All `init` events are fired to indicate the component or app has been initialized. If a component is contained in another component or app, the inner component is initialized first. If any server calls are made during rendering, `aura:waiting` is fired. Finally, `aura:doneWaiting` and `aura:doneRendering` are fired in that order to indicate that all rendering has been completed. For more information, see [Events Fired During the Rendering Lifecycle](#) on page 107.

SEE ALSO:

[Component Events](#)

[Handling Events with Client-Side Controllers](#)

[Advanced Events Example](#)

[What is Inherited?](#)

Application Event Example

Here's a simple use case of using an application event to update an attribute in another component.

1. A user clicks a button in the notifier component, `aeNotifier.cmp`.
2. The client-side controller for `aeNotifier.cmp` sets a message in a component event and fires the event.
3. The handler component, `aeHandler.cmp`, handles the fired event.
4. The client-side controller for `aeHandler.cmp` sets an attribute in `aeHandler.cmp` based on the data sent in the event.

The event and components in this example are in a `docsample` namespace. There is nothing special about this namespace but it's referenced in the code in a few places. Change the code to use a different namespace if you prefer.

Application Event

The `aeEvent.evt` application event has one attribute. We'll use this attribute to pass some data in the event when it's fired.

```
<!--docsample:aeEvent-->
<aura:event type="APPLICATION">
    <aura:attribute name="message" type="String"/>
</aura:event>
```

Notifier Component

The `aeNotifier.cmp` notifier component uses `aura:registerEvent` to declare that it may fire the application event. Note that the `name` attribute is required but not used for application events. The `name` attribute is only relevant for component events.

The button in the component contains a `press` browser event that is wired to the `fireApplicationEvent` action in the client-side controller. Clicking this button invokes the action.

```
<!--docsample:aeNotifier-->
<aura:component>
    <aura:registerEvent name="appEvent" type="docsample:aeEvent"/>

    <h1>Simple Application Event Sample</h1>
    <p><ui:button
        label="Click here to fire an application event"
        press="{!c.fireApplicationEvent}" />
    </p>
</aura:component>
```

aeNotifierController.js

The client-side controller gets an instance of the event by calling `$A.get("e.docsample:aeEvent")`. The controller sets the `message` attribute of the event and fires the event.

```
{
    fireApplicationEvent : function(cmp, event) {
        // Get the application event by using the
        // e.<namespace>.<event> syntax
        var appEvent = $A.get("e.docsample:aeEvent");
        appEvent.setParams({
            "message" : "An application event fired me. " +
                "It all happened so fast. Now, I'm everywhere!" });
        appEvent.fire();
    }
}
```

```

    }
}

```

Handler Component

The `aeHandler.cmp` handler component uses the `<aura:handler>` tag to register that it handles the application event.

When the event is fired, the `handleApplicationEvent` action in the client-side controller of the handler component is invoked.

```

<!--docsample:aeHandler-->
<aura:component>
    <aura:attribute name="messageFromEvent" type="String"/>
    <aura:attribute name="numEvents" type="Integer" default="0"/>

    <aura:handler event="docsample:aeEvent" action="{!c.handleApplicationEvent}"/>

    <p>{!v.messageFromEvent}</p>
    <p>Number of events: {!v.numEvents}</p>
</aura:component>

```

aeHandlerController.js

The controller retrieves the data sent in the event and uses it to update the `messageFromEvent` attribute in the handler component.

```

{
    handleApplicationEvent : function(cmp, event) {
        var message = event.getParam("message");

        // set the handler attributes based on event data
        cmp.set("v.messageFromEvent", message);
        var numEventsHandled = parseInt(cmp.get("v.numEvents")) + 1;
        cmp.set("v.numEvents", numEventsHandled);
    }
}

```

Container Component

The `aeContainer.cmp` container component contains the notifier and handler components. This is different from the component event example where the handler contains the notifier component.

```

<!--docsample:aeContainer-->
<aura:component>
    <docsample:aeNotifier/>
    <docsample:aeHandler/>
</aura:component>

```

Put It All Together

You can test this code by adding the resources to a sample application and navigating to the container component. For example, if you have a `docsample` application, navigate to:

`http://localhost:<port>/docsample/aeContainer.cmp`.

If you want to access data on the server, you could extend this example to call a server-side controller from the handler's client-side controller.

SEE ALSO:

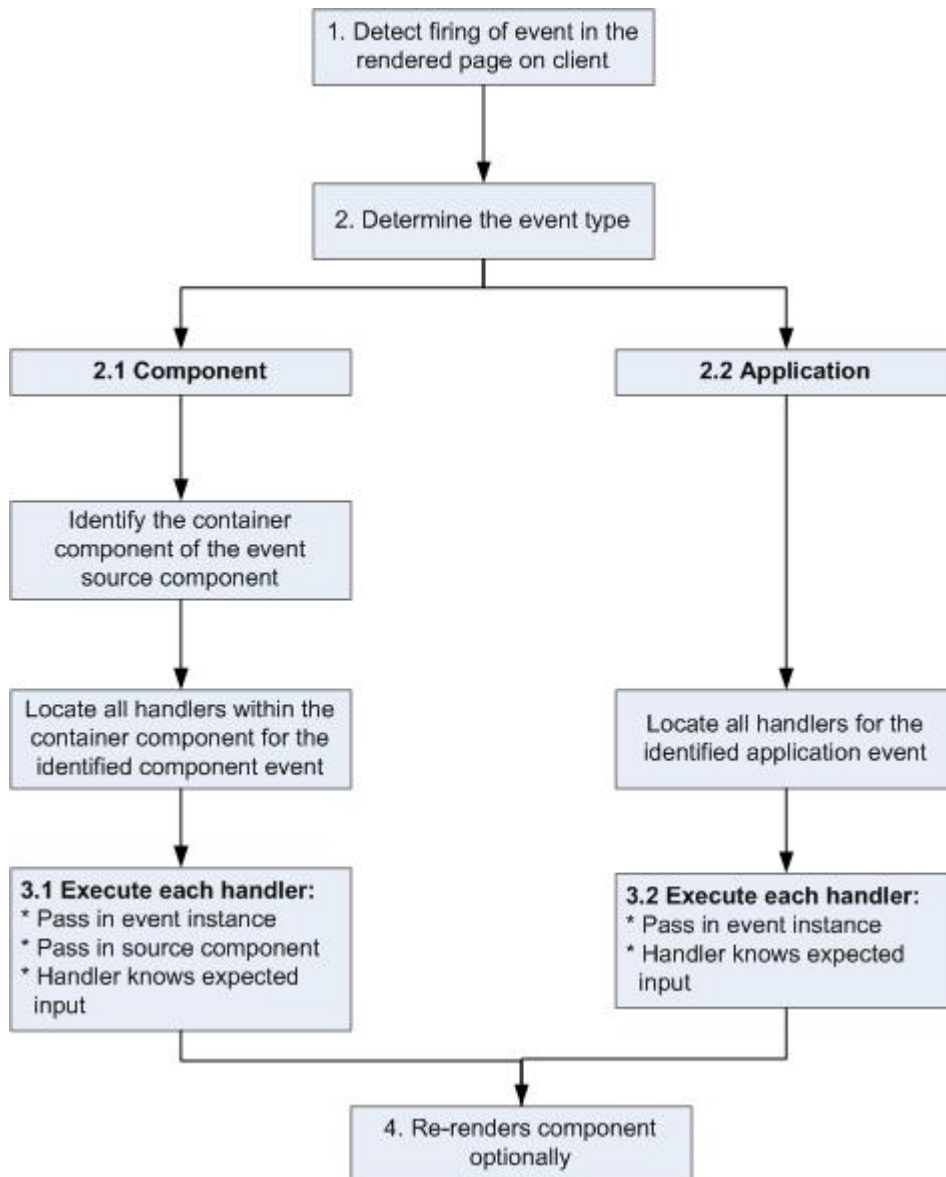
[Application Events](#)

[Creating Server-Side Logic with Controllers](#)

[Component Event Example](#)

Event Handling Lifecycle

The following chart summarizes how the framework handles events.



1 Detect Firing of Event

The framework detects the firing of an event. For example, the event could be triggered by a button click in a notifier component.

2 Determine the Event Type

2.1 Component Event

The parent or container component instance that fired the event is identified. This container component locates all relevant event handlers for further processing.

2.2 Application Event

Any component can have an event handler for this event. All relevant event handlers are located.

3 Execute each Handler

3.1 Executing a Component Event Handler

Each of the event handlers defined in the container component for the event are executed by the handler controller, which can also:

- Set attributes or modify data on the component (causing a re-rendering of the component).
- Fire another event or invoke a client-side or server-side action.

3.2 Executing an Application Event Handler

All event handlers are executed. When the event handler is executed, the event instance is passed into the event handler.

4 Re-render Component (optional)

After the event handlers and any callback actions are executed, a component might be automatically re-rendered if it was modified during the event handling process.

SEE ALSO:

[Client-Side Rendering to the DOM](#)

Advanced Events Example

This example builds on the simpler component and application event examples. It uses one notifier component and one handler component that work with both component and application events. Before we see a component wired up to events, let's look at the individual resources involved.

This table summarizes the roles of the various resources used in the example. The source code for these resources is included after the table.

Resource	Resource Name	Usage
Event files	Component event (<code>compEvent.evt</code>) and application event (<code>appEvent.evt</code>)	Defines the component and application events in separate resources. <code>eventsContainer.cmp</code> shows how to use both component and application events.
Notifier	Component (<code>eventsNotifier.cmp</code>) and its controller (<code>eventsNotifierController.js</code>)	The notifier contains an <code>onclick</code> browser event to initiate the event. The controller fires the event.

Resource	Resource Name	Usage
Handler	Component (<code>eventsHandler.cmp</code>) and its controller (<code>eventsHandlerController.js</code>)	The handler component contains the notifier component (or a <code><aura:handler></code> tag for application events), and calls the controller action that is executed after the event is fired.
Container Component	<code>eventsContainer.cmp</code>	Displays the event handlers on the UI for the complete demo.

The definitions of component and application events are stored in separate `.evt` resources, but individual notifier and handler component bundles can contain code to work with both types of events.

The component and application events both contain a `context` attribute that defines the shape of the event. This is the data that is passed to handlers of the event.

Component Event

Here is the markup for `compEvent.evt`.

```
<!--docsample:compEvent-->
<aura:event type="COMPONENT">
  <!-- pass context of where the event was fired to the handler. -->
  <aura:attribute name="context" type="String"/>
</aura:event>
```

Application Event

Here is the markup for `appEvent.evt`.

```
<!--docsample:appEvent-->
<aura:event type="APPLICATION">
  <!-- pass context of where the event was fired to the handler. -->
  <aura:attribute name="context" type="String"/>
</aura:event>
```

Notifier Component

The `eventsNotifier.cmp` notifier component contains a `press` browser event to initiate a component or application event.

The notifier uses `aura:registerEvent` tags to declare that it may fire the component and application events. Note that the `name` attribute is required but left empty for the application event.

The `parentName` attribute is not set yet. We will see how this attribute is set and surfaced in `eventsContainer.cmp`.

```
<!--docsample:eventsNotifier-->
<aura:component>
  <aura:attribute name="parentName" type="String"/>
  <aura:registerEvent name="componentEventFired" type="docsample:compEvent"/>
  <aura:registerEvent name="appEvent" type="docsample:appEvent"/>

  <div>
```



```

<h3>This is {!v.parentName}'s eventsNotifier.cmp instance</h3>
<p><ui:button
    label="Click here to fire a component event"
    press="{!c.fireComponentEvent}" />
</p>
<p><ui:button
    label="Click here to fire an application event"
    press="{!c.fireApplicationEvent}" />
</p>
</div>
</aura:component>

```

CSS source

The CSS is in eventsNotifier.css.

```

/* eventsNotifier.css */
.docsampleEventsNotifier {
    display: block;
    margin: 10px;
    padding: 10px;
    border: 1px solid black;
}

```

Client-side controller source

The eventsNotifierController.js controller fires the event.

```

/* eventsNotifierController.js */
{
    fireComponentEvent : function(cmp, event) {
        var parentName = cmp.get("v.parentName");

        // Look up event by name, not by type
        var compEvents = cmp.getEvent("componentEventFired");

        compEvents.setParams({ "context" : parentName });
        compEvents.fire();
    },

    fireApplicationEvent : function(cmp, event) {
        var parentName = cmp.get("v.parentName");

        // note different syntax for getting application event
        var appEvent = $A.get("e.docsample:appEvent");

        appEvent.setParams({ "context" : parentName });
        appEvent.fire();
    }
}

```

You can click the buttons to fire component and application events but there is no change to the output because we haven't wired up the handler component to react to the events yet.

The controller sets the `context` attribute of the component or application event to the `parentName` of the notifier component before firing the event. We will see how this affects the output when we look at the handler component.

Handler Component

The `eventsHandler.cmp` handler component contains the notifier component or a `<aura:handler>` tag, and calls the controller action that is executed after the event is fired.

```
<!--docsample:eventsHandler-->
<aura:component>
  <aura:attribute name="name" type="String"/>
  <aura:attribute name="mostRecentEvent" type="String" default="Most recent event handled:"/>

  <aura:attribute name="numComponentEventsHandled" type="Integer" default="0"/>
  <aura:attribute name="numApplicationEventsHandled" type="Integer" default="0"/>
  <aura:handler event="docsample:appEvent" action="{!c.handleApplicationEventFired}"/>

  <div>
    <h3>This is {!v.name}</h3>
    <p>{!v.mostRecentEvent}</p>
    <p># component events handled: {!v.numComponentEventsHandled}</p>
    <p># application events handled: {!v.numApplicationEventsHandled}</p>
    <docsample:eventsNotifier parentName="{#v.name}"
    componentEventFired="{!c.handleComponentEventFired}"/>
  </div>
</aura:component>
```



Note: `{#v.name}` is an unbound expression. This means that any change to the value of the `parentName` attribute in `docsample:eventsNotifier` doesn't propagate back to affect the value of the `name` attribute in `docsample:eventsHandler`. For more information, see [Data Binding in Expressions](#) on page 31.

CSS source

The CSS is in `eventsHandler.css`.

```
/* eventsHandler.css */
.docsampleEventsHandler {
  display: block;
  margin: 10px;
  padding: 10px;
  border: 1px solid black;
}
```

Client-side controller source

The client-side controller is in `eventsHandlerController.js`.

```
/* eventsHandlerController.js */
{
  handleComponentEventFired : function(cmp, event) {
    var context = event.getParam("context");
    cmp.set("v.mostRecentEvent",
      "Most recent event handled: COMPONENT event, from " + context);

    var numComponentEventsHandled =
      parseInt(cmp.get("v.numComponentEventsHandled")) + 1;
    cmp.set("v.numComponentEventsHandled", numComponentEventsHandled);
  },

  handleApplicationEventFired : function(cmp, event) {
```

```

var context = event.getParam("context");
cmp.set("v.mostRecentEvent",
    "Most recent event handled: APPLICATION event, from " + context);

var numApplicationEventsHandled =
    parseInt(cmp.get("v.numApplicationEventsHandled")) + 1;
cmp.set("v.numApplicationEventsHandled", numApplicationEventsHandled);
}
}

```

The `name` attribute is not set yet. We will see how this attribute is set and surfaced in `eventsContainer.cmp`.

You can click buttons and the UI now changes to indicate the type of event. The click count increments to indicate whether it's a component or application event. We aren't finished yet though. Notice that the source of the event is undefined as the event `context` attribute hasn't been set.

Container Component

Here is the markup for `eventsContainer.cmp`.

```

<!--docsample:eventsContainer-->
<aura:component>
    <docsample:eventsHandler name="eventsHandler1"/>
    <docsample:eventsHandler name="eventsHandler2"/>
</aura:component>

```

The container component contains two handler components. It sets the `name` attribute of both handler components, which is passed through to set the `parentName` attribute of the notifier components. This fills in the gaps in the UI text that we saw when we looked at the notifier or handler components directly.

Click the **Click here to fire a component event** button for either of the event handlers. Notice that the **# component events handled** counter only increments for that component because only the firing component's handler is notified.

Click the **Click here to fire an application event** button for either of the event handlers. Notice that the **# application events handled** counter increments for both the components this time because all the handling components are notified.

SEE ALSO:

[Component Event Example](#)

[Application Event Example](#)

[Event Handling Lifecycle](#)

Firing Aura Events from Non-Aura Code

You can fire Aura events from JavaScript code outside an Aura app. For example, your Aura app might need to call out to some non-Aura code, and then have that code communicate back to your Aura app once it's done.

For example, you could call external code that needs to log into another system and return some data to your Aura app. Let's call this event `mynamespace:externalEvent`. You'll fire this event when your non-Aura code is done by including this JavaScript in your non-Aura code.

```

var myExternalEvent;
if(window.opener.$A &&

```

```
(myExternalEvent = window.opener.$A.get("e.mynamespace:externalEvent")) {  
    myExternalEvent.setParams({isOauthed:true});  
    myExternalEvent.fire();  
}
```

`window.opener.$A.get()` references the master window where your Aura app is loaded.

SEE ALSO:

[Application Events](#)

[Modifying Components Outside the Framework Lifecycle](#)

Events Best Practices

Here are some best practices for working with events.

Separate Low-Level Events from Business Logic Events

It's a good practice to handle low-level events, such as a click, in your event handler and re-fire them as higher-level events, such as an `approvalChange` event or whatever is appropriate for your business logic.

Dynamic Actions based on Component State

If you need to invoke a different action on a click event depending on the state of the component, try this approach:

1. Store the component state as a discrete value, such as `New` or `Pending`, in a component attribute.
2. Put logic in your client-side controller to determine the next action to take.
3. If you need to reuse the logic in your component bundle, put the logic in the helper.

For example:

1. Your component markup contains `<ui:button label="do something" press="{!c.click}" />`.
2. In your controller, define the `click` function, which delegates to the appropriate helper function or potentially fires the correct event.

Using a Dispatcher Component to Listen and Relay Events

If you have a large number of handler component instances listening for an event, it may be better to identify a dispatcher component to listen for the event. The dispatcher component can perform some logic to decide which component instances should receive further information and fire another component or application event targeted at those component instances.

SEE ALSO:

[Handling Events with Client-Side Controllers](#)

[Events Anti-Patterns](#)

Events Anti-Patterns

These are some anti-patterns that you should avoid when using events.

Don't Fire an Event in a Renderer

Firing an event in a renderer can cause an infinite rendering loop.

Don't do this!

```
afterRender: function(cmp, helper) {  
    this.superAfterRender();  
    $A.get("e.myns:mycmp").fire();  
}
```

Instead, use the `init` hook to run a controller action after component construction but before rendering. Add this code to your component:

```
<aura:handler name="init" value="{!this}" action="{!c.doInit}"/>
```

For more details, see [Invoking Actions on Component Initialization](#) on page 137.

Don't Use `onclick` and `ontouchend` Events

You can't use different actions for `onclick` and `ontouchend` events in a component. The framework translates touch-tap events into clicks and activates any `onclick` handlers that are present.

SEE ALSO:

[Client-Side Rendering to the DOM](#)

[Events Best Practices](#)

Events Fired During the Rendering Lifecycle

A component is instantiated, rendered, and rerendered during its lifecycle. A component is rerendered only when there's a programmatic or value change that would require a rerender, such as when a browser event triggers an action that updates its data.

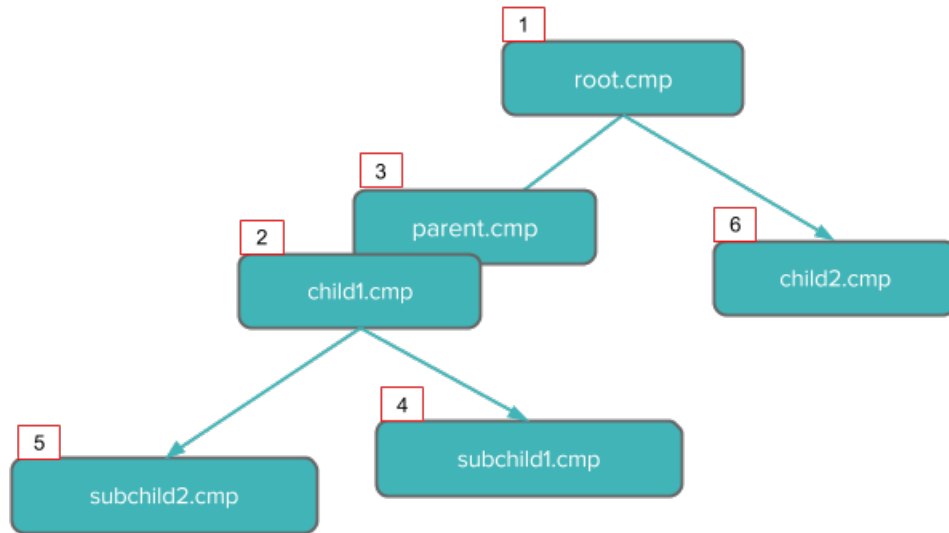
Component Creation

The component lifecycle starts when the client sends an HTTP request to the server and the component configuration data is returned to the client. No server trip is made if the component definition is already on the client from a previous request and the component has no server dependencies.

Let's look at an app with several nested components. The framework instantiates the app and goes through the children of the `v.body` facet to create each component. First, it creates the component definition, its entire parent hierarchy, and then creates the facets within those components. The framework also creates any component dependencies on the server, including definitions for attributes, interfaces, controllers, actions, and models.

For an abstract component, your JavaScript or Java provider determines which concrete implementation of the component to create.

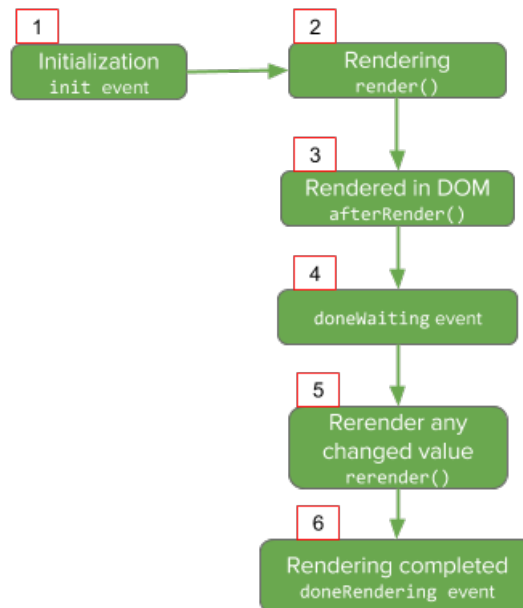
The following image lists the order of component creation.



After creating a component instance, the serialized component definitions and instances are sent down to the client. Definitions are cached but not the instance data. The client deserializes the response to create the JavaScript objects or maps, resulting in an instance tree that's used to render the component instance. When the component tree is ready, the `init` event is fired for all the components, starting from the children component and finishing in the parent component.

Component Rendering

The following image depicts a typical rendering lifecycle of a component on the client, after the component definitions and instances are deserialized.



1. The `init` event is fired by the component service that constructs the components to signal that initialization has completed.

```
<aura:handler name="init" value="{!this}" action="{!c.doInit}"/>
```


You can customize the `init` handler and add your own controller logic before the component starts rendering. For more information, see [Invoking Actions on Component Initialization](#) on page 137.

2. For each component in the tree, the base implementation of `render()` or your custom renderer is called to start component rendering. For more information, see [Client-Side Rendering to the DOM](#) on page 125. Similar to the component creation process, rendering starts at the root component, its children components and their super components, if any, and finally the subchildren components.
3. Once your components are rendered to the DOM, `afterRender()` is called to signal that rendering is completed for each of these component definitions. It enables you to interact with the DOM tree after the framework rendering service has created the DOM elements.
4. To indicate that the client is done waiting for a response to the server request XHR, the `doneWaiting` event is fired. You can handle this event by adding a handler wired to a client-side controller action.
5. The framework checks whether any components need to be rerendered and rerenders any “dirty” components to reflect any updates to attribute values. This rerender check is done even if there’s no dirty components or values.
6. Finally, the `doneRendering` event is fired at the end of the rendering lifecycle.

Let’s see what happens when a `ui:button` component is returned from the server and any rerendering that occurs when the button is clicked to update its label.

```
<!-- The uiExamples:buttonExample container component -->
<aura:component>
    <aura:attribute name="num" type="Integer" default="0"/>
    <ui:button aura:id="button" label="{!v.num}" press="{!c.update}"/>
</aura:component>
```

```
/** Client-side Controller */
({
    update : function(cmp, evt) {
        cmp.set("v.num", cmp.get("v.num")+1);
    }
})
```

 **Note:** It’s helpful to refer to the `ui:button` source to understand the component definitions to be rendered. For more information, see

<https://github.com/forcedotcom/aura/blob/master/aura-components/src/main/components/ui/button/button.cmp>.

After initialization, `render()` is called to render `ui:button`. `ui:button` doesn’t have a custom renderer, and uses the base implementation of `render()`. In this example, `render()` is called eight times in the following order.

Component	Description
<code>uiExamples:buttonExample</code>	The top-level component that contains the <code>ui:button</code> component
<code>ui:button</code>	The <code>ui:button</code> component that’s in the top-level component
<code>aura:html</code>	Renders the <code><button></code> tag.
<code>aura:if</code>	The first <code>aura:if</code> tag in <code>ui:button</code> , which doesn’t render anything since the button contains no image

Component	Description
<code>aura:if</code>	The second <code>aura:if</code> tag in <code>ui:button</code>
<code>aura:html</code>	The <code></code> tag for the button label, nested in the <code><button></code> tag
<code>aura:expression</code>	The <code>v.num</code> expression
<code>aura:expression</code>	Empty <code>v.body</code> expression

HTML tags in the markup are converted to `aura:html`, which has a `tag` attribute that defines the HTML tag to be generated. When rendering is done, this example calls `afterRender()` eight times for these component definitions. The `doneWaiting` event is fired, followed by the `doneRendering` event.

Clicking the button updates its label, which checks for any “dirty” components and fires `rerender()` to rerender these components, followed by the `doneRendering` event. In this example, `rerender()` is called eight times. All changed values are stored in a list on the rendering service, resulting in the rerendering of any “dirty” components.

 **Note:** Firing an event in a custom renderer is not recommended. For more information, see [Events Anti-Patterns](#).

Rendering Nested Components

Let’s say that you have an app `myApp.app` that contains a component `myCmp.cmp` with a `ui:button` component.



During initialization, the `init()` event is fired in this order: `ui:button`, `ui:myCmp`, and `myApp.app`. The `doneWaiting` event is fired in the same order. Finally, the `doneRendering` event is also called in the same order.

SEE ALSO:

[Client-Side Rendering to the DOM](#)

[Server-Side Processing for Component Requests](#)

[Client-Side Processing for Component Requests](#)

[System Event Reference](#)

CREATING APPS

CHAPTER 10 App Basics

In this chapter ...

- [App Overview](#)
- [Designing App UI](#)
- [Creating App Templates](#)

Components are the building blocks of an app.

This section shows you a typical workflow to put the pieces together to create a new app.

App Overview

An app is a special top-level component whose markup is in a `.app` file.

On a production server, the `.app` file is the only addressable unit in a browser URL. Access an app using the URL:

`http://<myServer>/<namespace>/<appName>.app`



Note: You can access components directly in a browser URL in DEV mode by using the component's `.cmp` extension.

SEE ALSO:

[aura:application](#)

[Supported HTML Tags](#)

Designing App UI

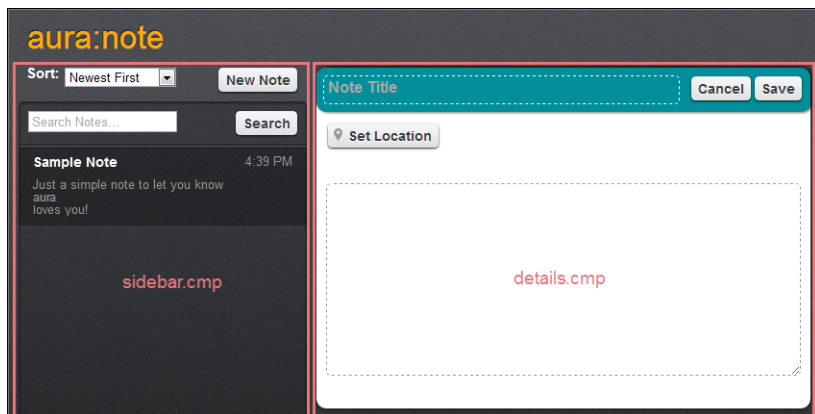
Design your app's UI by including markup in the `.app` resource, which starts with the `<aura:application>` tag.

Let's take a look at the `notes.app` file for the Aura Note sample app.

```
<aura:application template="auranote:template">
  <div>
    <header>
      <h1>aura:note</h1>
    </header>
    <ui:block class="wrapper" aura:id="block">
      <aura:set attribute="left">
        <auranote:sidebar aura:id="sidebar" />
      </aura:set>
      <auranote:details aura:id="details" />
    </ui:block>
  </div>
</aura:application>
```

To learn about system attributes of `<aura:application>`, such as `template`, see [aura:application](#).

`notes.app` contains HTML tags, such as `<h1>` and `<div>`, as well as components, such as `<ui:block>`. We won't go into the details for all the components here but note how simple the markup is. The `<auranote:sidebar>` and `<auranote:details>` components encapsulate the layout for the page.



SEE ALSO:

[aura:application](#)

[Aura Demos](#)

Creating App Templates

An app template bootstraps the loading of the framework and the app. Customize an app's template by creating a component that extends the default `aura:template` template.

A template must have the `isTemplate` system attribute in the `<aura:component>` tag set to `true`. This informs the framework to allow restricted items, such as `<script>` tags, which aren't allowed in regular components.

For example, the Aura Note sample app has a `auranote:template` template that extends `aura:template`. `auranote:template` looks like:

```
<aura:component isTemplate="true" extends="aura:template">
  <aura:set attribute="title" value="Aura Notes"/>
  ...
</aura:component>
```

Note how the component extends `aura:template` and sets the `title` attribute using `aura:set`. Take a look at the `aura:template` documentation to see the other template attributes that you can customize.

The `notes.app` file points at the custom template by setting the `template` system attribute in `<aura:application>`.

```
<aura:application template="auranote:template">
  ...
</aura:application>
```

A template can only extend a component or another template. A component or an application can't extend a template.

JavaScript Libraries

You can reference a JavaScript library in your app's template, but we don't recommend it. For preferred options, see [Using External JavaScript Libraries](#) on page 118.

To add a JavaScript library to your app's template, use `aura:set` to set the `extraScriptTags` attribute in the template component. This sets the `extraScriptTags` attribute in `aura:template`, which your app's template extends.

For example, the Aura Note sample app uses `ckeditor.js`, which is a third-party JavaScript library. The `auranote:template` includes this markup to include the library.

```
<aura:set attribute="extraScriptTags">
  <script type="text/javascript" src="/aura/ckeditor/ckeditor.js"></script>
</aura:set>
```

You can use multiple `<script>` tags to include more than one library. For example:

```
<aura:set attribute="extraScriptTags">
  <script type="text/javascript" src="/aura/ckeditor/ckeditor.js"></script>
  <script type="text/javascript" src="/aura/codemirror/codemirror.js"></script>
</aura:set>
```

External CSS

To use an external style sheet, you must link to it in your app's template. Use `aura:set` to set the `extraStyleTags` attribute in the template component. This sets the `extraStyleTags` attribute in `aura:template`, which your app's template extends.

For example:

```
<aura:set attribute="extraStyleTags">
  <link href="/aura/external/google-code-prettify/prettify.css" rel="stylesheet"
type="text/css" />
</aura:set>
```

You can link to multiple external style sheets. For example:

```
<aura:set attribute="extraStyleTags">
  <link href="/aura/external/google-code-prettify/prettify.css" rel="stylesheet"
type="text/css" />
  <link href="/aura/external/morecss/morecss.css" rel="stylesheet" type="text/css"
/>
</aura:set>
```

You can also use inline style in your template, but we recommend using an external style sheet instead. To use inline style, use `aura:set` to set the `inlineStyle` attribute in the template component. For example:

```
<aura:set attribute="inlineStyle">
  <style>
    body {
      background-color: #6cc4e3;
    }
  </style>
</aura:set>
```

SEE ALSO:

[Aura Demos](#)

[aura:application](#)

[CSS in Components](#)

[Using External JavaScript Libraries](#)

CHAPTER 11 Styling Apps

An app is a special top-level component whose markup is in a `.app` resource. Just like any other component, you can put CSS in its bundle in a resource called `<appName>.css`.

For example, if the app markup is in `notes.app`, its CSS is in `notes.css`.

IN THIS SECTION:

[Using External CSS](#)

Add a `<aura:clientLibrary>` tag in a `.cmp` or `.app` file to specify a CSS library that you want to use.

SEE ALSO:

[CSS in Components](#)

[Creating App Templates](#)

Using External CSS

Add a `<aura:clientLibrary>` tag in a `.cmp` or `.app` file to specify a CSS library that you want to use.

The older method for including external CSS was to add it to your app's template. This method is still supported but `<aura:clientLibrary>` is preferable because it enables you to add the library to the actual component that uses it. Also, it's useful if the location or URL of the library needs to be dynamically generated.

SEE ALSO:

[aura:clientLibrary](#)

[Using External JavaScript Libraries](#)

Vendor Prefixes

Vendor prefixes, such as `–moz–` and `–webkit–` among many others, are automatically added in Aura.

You only need to write the unprefixed version, and the framework automatically adds any prefixes that are necessary when generating the CSS output. If you choose to add them, they are used as-is. This enables you to specify alternative values for certain prefixes.



Example: For example, this is an unprefixed version of `border-radius`.

```
.class {  
    border-radius: 2px;  
}
```

The previous declaration results in the following declarations.

```
.class {  
  -webkit-border-radius: 2px;  
  -moz-border-radius: 2px;  
  border-radius: 2px;  
}
```

CHAPTER 12 Using JavaScript

In this chapter ...

- [Accessing the DOM](#)
- [Using External JavaScript Libraries](#)
- [Creating Reusable JavaScript Libraries](#)
- [Working with Attribute Values in JavaScript](#)
- [Working with a Component Body in JavaScript](#)
- [Sharing JavaScript Code in a Component Bundle](#)
- [Client-Side Rendering to the DOM](#)
- [Client-Side Runtime Binding of Components](#)
- [Modifying Components Outside the Framework Lifecycle](#)
- [Validating Fields](#)
- [Throwing and Handling Errors](#)
- [Calling Component Methods](#)
- [Making API Calls](#)

Use JavaScript for client-side code. The `Aura` object is the top-level object in the JavaScript framework code. For all the methods available in the `Aura` class, see the [JavaScript API](#).

`$A` is the shorthand in JavaScript code for the `Aura` object.

A component bundle can contain JavaScript code in a client-side controller, renderer, helper, or test file. Client-side controllers are the most commonly used of these JavaScript files.

Publicly Accessible JavaScript Methods

The JavaScript API Reference lists the publicly accessible methods for each JavaScript object. When you are writing code, it's important to understand which methods are publicly accessible for a JavaScript object. Each object has an associated `_export.js` file that lists the public methods that can be called. For example, `Action.js` has a corresponding `Action_export.js`. You should only call JavaScript methods that are advertised in an object's `_export.js` file. If you don't, you might get hard-to-debug bugs when you run your code in `PROD` mode.

Expressions in JavaScript Code

In JavaScript, use string syntax to evaluate an expression. For example, this expression retrieves the `label` attribute in a component.

```
var theLabel = cmp.get("v.label");
```



Note: Only use the `{ ! }` expression syntax in markup in `.app` or `.cmp` files.

Accessing the DOM

The Document Object Model (DOM) is the language-independent model for representing and interacting with objects in HTML and XML documents. The framework's rendering service takes in-memory component state and updates the component in the DOM.

The framework automatically renders your components so you don't have to know anything more about rendering unless you need to customize the default rendering behavior for a component.

There are two very important guidelines for accessing the DOM from a component or app.

- You should never modify the DOM outside a renderer. However, you can read from the DOM outside a renderer.
- Use expressions, whenever possible, instead of trying to set a DOM element directly.

Using Renderers

The rendering service is the bridge from the framework to update the DOM. If you modify the DOM from a client-side controller, the changes may be overwritten when the components are rendered, depending on how the component renderers behave.

Using Expressions

You can often avoid writing a custom renderer by using expressions in the markup instead.

SEE ALSO:

[Dynamically Showing or Hiding Markup](#)
[Client-Side Rendering to the DOM](#)
[Expressions](#)

Using External JavaScript Libraries

To use JavaScript libraries in your apps, add an `<aura:clientLibrary>` tag in a `.cmp` or `.app` resource. See [aura:clientLibrary](#). Alternatively, you can include `<script>` tags in your `.app` file.

The older method for including a JavaScript library was to add it to your app's template. This method is still supported but `<aura:clientLibrary>` is preferable because it enables you to add the library to the actual component that uses it. Also, it's useful if the location or URL of the library needs to be dynamically generated.

SEE ALSO:

[Aura Demos](#)
[Creating App Templates](#)
[aura:application](#)

Creating Reusable JavaScript Libraries

An Aura JavaScript library enables you to create a set of JavaScript files that can be used by any component that imports the library.

Creating a Library

Every library lives in a namespace and follows a naming convention. The `docsample:myLib` library points to a library in `docsample/myLib/myLib.lib`.

A library is defined in a `.lib` file that starts with the `<aura:library>` tag. A library includes an arbitrary number of JavaScript files. Each file is defined with an `<aura:include>` tag.

For example, this `myLib.lib` library includes three files.

```
<aura:library description="A set of global services">
  <aura:include name="ViewService" />
  <aura:include name="ErrorService" />
  <aura:include name="LogService" imports="ErrorService"/>
</aura:library>
```

The `name` attribute of `<aura:include>` is the name of the JavaScript file with or without the `.js` suffix. For example, `name="ViewService"` or `name="ViewService.js"` points to `docsample/myLib/ViewService.js`.

The `imports` attribute of `<aura:include>` specifies another JavaScript file that is referenced and imported in the included file. For example, this import specifies that `LogService.js` uses code in `ErrorService.js`.

```
<aura:include name="LogService" imports="ErrorService"/>
```

This example imports an `OtherErrorService` file that is used in a different library, `othernamespace:otherLibrary`.

```
<aura:include name="LogService"
  imports="othernamespace:otherLibrary:OtherErrorService"/>
```

Use a comma-separated list to import more than one JavaScript file. This example imports multiple files.

```
<aura:include name="LogService" imports="ErrorService,BaseLogService"/>
```

Importing a Library

Use the `<aura:import>` tag in a component's markup to import a library and enable usage of the library in the component's JavaScript files.

This markup imports the `docsample:myLib` library.

```
<aura:import library="docsample:myLib" property="BaseServices" />
```

The `property` attribute of `<aura:import>` is the variable name that can be used in the component's helper to reference the library.

Using a Library

You can reference the library in the helper of the component that imports the library by using the `property` attribute.

To reference one of the JavaScript files from the library in the helper, use this syntax:

```
var ViewService = this.BaseServices.ViewService;
```

`BaseServices` is the `property` value defined in the `<aura:import>` tag.

To reference a library file in the controller, use this syntax:

```
var ViewService = helper.BaseServices.ViewService;
```

Format of Library Files

For external JavaScript libraries, use [aura:clientLibrary](#) instead.

Each file in a library must be a function. The return value of the function is the singleton instance that is bound to the helper of a component that imports the library.

For example, let's look at a sample `ViewService.js` file.

```
function() {
    return {
        getView: function() {
            ...
        }
    }
}
```

You can call the `getView()` function in a helper using this syntax:

```
var view = this.BaseServices.ViewService.getView();
```

Here is a sample `LogService.js` file that imports `ErrorService.js`.

```
function(ErrorService) {
    return {
        log: function() {
            ...
        }
    }
}
```

Note how the imported `ErrorService` is set as an argument in the opening function.

Working with Attribute Values in JavaScript

These are useful and common patterns for working with attribute values in JavaScript.

`component.get(String key)` and `component.set(String key, Object value)` retrieves and assigns values associated with the specified key on the component. Keys are passed in as an expression, which represents attribute values. To retrieve an attribute value of a component reference, use `component.find("cmpId").get("v.value")`. Similarly, use `component.find("cmpId").set("v.value", myValue)` to set the attribute value of a component reference. This example shows how you can retrieve and set attribute values on a component reference, represented by the button with an ID of `button1`.

```
<aura:component>
    <aura:attribute name="buttonLabel" type="String"/>
    <ui:button aura:id="button1" label="Button 1"/>
    {!v.buttonLabel}
    <ui:button label="Get Label" press="{!c.getLabel}"/>
</aura:component>
```

This controller action retrieves the `label` attribute value of a button in a component and sets its value on the `buttonLabel` attribute.

```
{
    getLabel : function(component, event, helper) {
```

```
var myLabel = component.find("button1").get("v.label");
component.set("v.buttonLabel", myLabel);
}
})
```

In the following examples, `cmp` is a reference to a component in your JavaScript code.

Get an Attribute Value

To get the value of a component's `label` attribute:

```
var label = cmp.get("v.label");
```

Set an Attribute Value

To set the value of a component's `label` attribute:

```
cmp.set("v.label", "This is a label");
```

Get a Boolean Attribute Value

To get the boolean value of a component's `myString` attribute:

```
var myString = $A.util.getBooleanValue(cmp.get("v.myString"));
```

For example, the following attribute returns `true` when passed into `$A.util.getBooleanValue()`.

```
<aura:attribute name="myString" type="String" default="my string"/>
```

If the attribute is of type Boolean, `cmp.get("v.myBoolean")` returns the boolean value and `$A.util.getBooleanValue()` is not needed.

Validate that an Attribute Value is Defined

To determine if a component's `label` attribute is defined:

```
var isDefined = !$A.util.isUndefined(cmp.get("v.label"));
```

Validate that an Attribute Value is Empty

To determine if a component's `label` attribute is empty:

```
var isEmpty = $A.util.isEmpty(cmp.get("v.label"));
```

SEE ALSO:

[Accessing Models in JavaScript](#)

[Working with a Component Body in JavaScript](#)

Working with a Component Body in JavaScript

These are useful and common patterns for working with a component's body in JavaScript.

In these examples, `cmp` is a reference to a component in your JavaScript code. It's usually easy to get a reference to a component in JavaScript code. Remember that the `body` attribute is an array of components, so you can use the JavaScript `Array` methods on it.



Note: When you use `cmp.set("v.body", ...)` to set the component body, you must explicitly include `{!v.body}` in your component markup.

Replace a Component's Body

To replace the current value of a component's body with another component:

```
// newCmp is a reference to another component
cmp.set("v.body", newCmp);
```

Clear a Component's Body

To clear or empty the current value of a component's body:

```
cmp.set("v.body", []);
```

Append a Component to a Component's Body

To append a `newCmp` component to a component's body:

```
var body = cmp.get("v.body");
// newCmp is a reference to another component
body.push(newCmp);
cmp.set("v.body", body);
```

Prepend a Component to a Component's Body

To prepend a `newCmp` component to a component's body:

```
var body = cmp.get("v.body");
body.unshift(newCmp);
cmp.set("v.body", body);
```

Remove a Component from a Component's Body

To remove an indexed entry from a component's body:

```
var body = cmp.get("v.body");
// Index (3) is zero-based so remove the fourth component in the body
```

```
body.splice(3, 1);  
cmp.set("v.body", body);
```

SEE ALSO:

[Component Body](#)

[Working with Attribute Values in JavaScript](#)

Sharing JavaScript Code in a Component Bundle

Put functions that you want to reuse in the component's helper. Helper functions also enable specialization of tasks, such as processing data and firing server-side actions.

They can be called from any JavaScript code in a component's bundle, such as from a client-side controller or renderer. Helper functions are similar to client-side controller functions in shape, surrounded by brackets and curly braces to denote a JSON object containing a map of name-value pairs. A helper function can pass in any arguments required by the function, such as the component it belongs to, a callback, or any other objects.

Creating a Helper

A helper file is part of the component bundle and is auto-wired via the naming convention, `<componentName>Helper.js`.

To reuse a helper from another component, you can use the `helper` system attribute in `aura:component` instead. For example, this component uses the auto-wired helper for `auradocs.sampleComponent` in `auradocs/sampleComponent/sampleComponentHelper.js`.

```
<aura:component  
    helper="js://auradocs.sampleComponent">  
    ...  
</aura:component>
```



Note: If you are reusing a helper from another component and you already have an auto-wired helper in your component bundle, the methods in your auto-wired helper will not be accessible. We recommend that you use a helper within the component bundle for maintainability and use an external helper only if you must.

Using a Helper in a Renderer

Add a helper argument to a renderer function to enable the function to use the helper. In the renderer, specify `(component, helper)` as parameters in a function signature to enable the function to access the component's helper. These are standard parameters and you don't have to access them in the function. The following code shows an example on how you can override the `afterRender()` function in the renderer and call `open` in the helper method.

detailsRenderer.js

```
((  
    afterRender : function(component, helper){  
        helper.open(component, null, "new");  
    }  
}))
```

detailsHelper.js

```
({
  open : function(component, note, mode, sort){
    if(mode === "new") {
      //do something
    }
    // do something else, such as firing an event
  }
})
```

For an example on using helper methods to customize renderers, see [Client-Side Rendering to the DOM](#).

Using a Helper in a Controller

Add a `helper` argument to a controller function to enable the function to use the helper. Specify `(component, event, helper)` in the controller. These are standard parameters and you don't have to access them in the function. You can also pass in an instance variable as a parameter, for example, `createExpense: function(component, expense){...}`, where `expense` is a variable defined in the component.

The following code shows you how to call the `updateItem` helper function in a controller, which can be used with a custom event handler.

```
({
  newItemEvent: function(component, event, helper) {
    helper.updateItem(component, event.getParam("item"));
  }
})
```

Helper functions are local to a component, improve code reuse, and move the heavy lifting of JavaScript logic away from the client-side controller where possible. The following code shows the helper function, which takes in the `value` parameter set in the controller via the `item` argument. The code walks through calling a server-side action and returning a callback but you can do something else in the helper function.

```
({
  updateItem : function(component, item, callback) {
    //Update the items via a server-side action
    var action = component.get("c.saveItem");
    action.setParams({"item" : item});
    //Set any optional callback and enqueue the action
    if (callback) {
      action.setCallback(this, callback);
    }
    $A.enqueueAction(action);
  }
})
```

SEE ALSO:

[Client-Side Rendering to the DOM](#)

[Component Bundles](#)

[Handling Events with Client-Side Controllers](#)

Client-Side Rendering to the DOM

The framework's rendering service takes in-memory component state and updates the component in the Document Object Model (DOM).

The DOM is the language-independent model for representing and interacting with objects in HTML and XML documents. The framework automatically renders your components so you don't have to know anything more about rendering unless you need to customize the default rendering behavior for a component.

You should never modify the DOM outside a renderer. However, you can read from the DOM outside a renderer.

Rendering Lifecycle

The rendering lifecycle automatically handles rendering and rerendering of components whenever the underlying data changes. Here is an outline of the rendering lifecycle.

1. A browser event triggers one or more Aura events.
2. Each Aura event triggers one or more actions that can update data. The updated data can fire more events.
3. The rendering service tracks the stack of events that are fired.
4. When all the data updates from the events are processed, the framework rerenders all the components that own modified data.

For more information, see [Events Fired During the Rendering Lifecycle](#).

Base Component Rendering

The base component in the framework is `aura:component`. Every component extends this base component.

The renderer for `aura:component` is in `componentRenderer.js`. This renderer has base implementations for the `render()`, `rerender()`, `afterRender()`, and `unrender()` functions. The framework calls these functions as part of the rendering lifecycle. We will learn more about them in this topic. You can override the base rendering functions in a custom renderer.




Note: When you create a new component, the framework fires an `init` event, enabling you to update a component or fire an event after component construction but before rendering. The default renderer, `render()`, gets the component body and use the rendering service to render it.

Creating a Renderer

You don't normally have to write a custom renderer, but if you want to customize rendering behavior, you can create a client-side renderer in a component bundle. A renderer file is part of the component bundle and is auto-wired if you follow the naming convention, `<componentName>Renderer.js`. For example, the renderer for `sample.cmp` would be in `sampleRenderer.js`.

To reuse a renderer from another component, you can use the `renderer` system attribute in `aura:component` instead. For example, this component uses the auto-wired renderer for `auradocs.sampleComponent` in `auradocs/sampleComponent/sampleComponentRenderer.js`.

```
<aura:component
    renderer="js://auradocs.sampleComponent">
    ...
</aura:component>
```


 **Note:** If you are reusing a renderer from another component and you already have an auto-wired renderer in your component bundle, the methods in your auto-wired renderer will not be accessible. We recommend that you use a renderer within the component bundle for maintainability and use an external renderer only if you must.

Customizing Component Rendering

Customize rendering by creating a `render()` function in your component's renderer to override the base `render()` function, which updates the DOM.

The `render()` function typically returns a DOM node, an array of DOM nodes, or nothing. The base HTML component expects DOM nodes when it renders a component.

You generally want to extend default rendering by calling `superRender()` from your `render()` function before you add your custom rendering code. Calling `superRender()` creates the DOM nodes specified in the markup.

 **Note:** These guidelines are very important when you customize rendering.

- A renderer should only modify DOM elements that are part of the component. You should never break component encapsulation by reaching in to another component and changing its DOM elements, even if you are reaching in from the parent component.
- A renderer should never fire an event. An alternative is to use an `init` event instead.

Rerendering Components

When an event is fired, it may trigger actions to change data and call `rerender()` on affected components. The `rerender()` function enables components to update themselves based on updates to other components since they were last rendered. This function doesn't return a value.

The framework automatically calls `rerender()` if you update data in a component. You only have to explicitly call `rerender()` if you haven't updated the data but you still want to rerender the component.

You generally want to extend default rerendering by calling `superRerender()` from your `render()` function before you add your custom rerendering code. Calling `superRerender()` chains the rerendering to the components in the `body` attribute.

Accessing the DOM After Rendering

The `afterRender()` function enables you to interact with the DOM tree after the framework's rendering service has inserted DOM elements. It's not necessarily the final call in the rendering lifecycle; it's simply called after `render()` and it doesn't return a value.

If you want to use a library to access the DOM, use it in `afterRender()`.

You generally want to extend default after rendering by calling `superAfterRender()` function before you add your custom code.

Unrendering Components

The base `unrender()` function deletes all the DOM nodes rendered by a component's `render()` function. It is called by the framework when a component is being destroyed. Customize this behavior by overriding `unrender()` in your component's renderer. This can be useful when you are working with third-party libraries that are not native to the framework.

You generally want to extend default unrendering by calling `superUnrender()` from your `unrender()` function before you add your custom code.

Ensuring Client-Side Rendering

The framework calls the default server-side renderer by default, or a client-side renderer if you have one. If you want to ensure client-side rendering of a top-level component, append `render="client"` to the `aura:component` tag. Setting this in the top-level component will take precedence over the framework's detection logic, which takes dependencies into consideration. This is especially useful if you are testing the component directly in your browser and want to inspect the component using the client-side framework when the test loads. Setting `render="client"` for test components ensures that the client-side framework is loaded, even though it normally wouldn't be needed.

Rendering Example

Let's look at the button component to see how it customizes the base rendering behavior. It is important to know that every tag in markup, including standard HTML tags, has an underlying component representation. Therefore, the framework's rendering service uses the same process to render standard HTML tags or custom components that you create.

View the source for `ui:button`. Note that the button component includes a `disabled` attribute to track the disabled status for the component in a `Boolean`.

```
<aura:attribute name="disabled" type="Boolean" default="false"/>
```

In `button.cmp`, `onclick` is set to `{!c.press}`.

The renderer for the button component is `buttonRenderer.js`. The button component overrides the default `render()` function.

```
render : function(cmp, helper) {
    var ret = this.superRender();
    helper.updateDisabled(cmp);
    return ret;
},
```

The first line calls the `superRender()` function to invoke the default rendering behavior. The `helper.updateDisabled(cmp)` call invokes a helper function to customize the rendering.

Let's look at the `updateDisabled(cmp)` function in `buttonHelper.js`.

```
updateDisabled: function(cmp) {
    if (cmp.get("v.disabled")) {
        var disabled = $A.util.getBooleanValue(cmp.get("v.disabled"));
        var button = cmp.find("button");
        if (button) {
            var element = button.getElement();
            if (element) {
                if (disabled) {
                    element.setAttribute('disabled', 'disabled');
                } else {
                    element.removeAttribute('disabled');
                }
            }
        }
    }
}
```

The `updateDisabled(cmp)` function translates the `Boolean disabled` value to the value expected in HTML, where the attribute doesn't exist or is set to `disabled`.

It uses `cmp.find("button")` to retrieve a unique component. Note that `button.cmp` uses `aura:id="button"` to uniquely identify the component. `button.getElement()` returns the DOM element.

The `rerender()` function in `buttonRenderer.js` is very similar to the `render()` function. Note that it also calls `updateDisabled(cmp)`.

```
rerender : function(cmp, helper){
    this.superRerender();
    helper.updateDisabled(cmp);
}
```

Rendering components is part of the lifecycle of the framework and it's a bit trickier to demonstrate than some other concepts. The takeaway is that you don't need to think about it unless you need to customize the default rendering behavior for a component.

SEE ALSO:

[Accessing the DOM](#)

[Invoking Actions on Component Initialization](#)

[Component Bundles](#)

[Modifying Components Outside the Framework Lifecycle](#)


[Sharing JavaScript Code in a Component Bundle](#)

[Server-Side Rendering to the DOM](#)

Client-Side Runtime Binding of Components

A provider enables you to use an abstract component or an interface in markup. The framework uses the provider to determine the concrete component to use at runtime.

Server-side providers are more common, but if you don't need to access the server when you're creating a component, you can use a client-side provider instead.

 **Note:** The framework behavior is undefined if a component has a client-side provider and a server-side provider that return different values. It's preferable to only use a server-side or a client-side provider unless you need both.


Creating a Provider

A client-side provider is part of the component bundle and is auto-wired if you follow the naming convention,

`<componentName>Provider.js`.

To reuse a provider from another component, you can use the `provider` system attribute in `aura:component` instead. For example, this component uses the auto-wired provider for `auradocs.sampleComponent` in `auradocs/sampleComponent/sampleComponentProvider.js`.

```
<aura:component
    provider="js://auradocs.sampleComponent">
    ...
</aura:component>
```

 **Note:** If you are reusing a provider from another component and you already have an auto-wired provider in your component bundle, the methods in your auto-wired provider will not be accessible. We recommend that you use a provider within the component bundle for maintainability and use an external provider only if you must.

A client-side provider is a simple JavaScript object that defines the `provide` function. For example, this provider returns a string that defines the topic to display.

```
((  
  provide : function (cmp) {  
    var topic = cmp.get('v.topic');  
    return 'auradocs' + topic + 'Topic';  
  }  
}))
```

Instead of a string, a provider can return a JSON object to provide both the concrete component and set some additional attributes. For example:

```
((  
  provide : function (cmp) {  
    var topic = cmp.get('v.topic');  
    return {  
      componentDef: 'auradocs' + topic + 'Topic',  
      attributes: {  
        "type": "task"  
      }  
    }  
  }  
}))
```

You can omit the `componentDef` entry if the component is already concrete and you only want to provide attributes.

Declaring Provider Dependencies

The framework automatically tracks dependencies between definitions, such as components. However, if a component uses a provider that instantiates components that are not directly referenced elsewhere, use `<aura:dependency>` in the component markup to explicitly tell the framework about the dependency, which wouldn't otherwise be discovered.

SEE ALSO:

[Server-Side Runtime Binding of Components](#)

[Abstract Components](#)

[Interfaces](#)

[Component Bundles](#)

[aura:dependency](#)

Modifying Components Outside the Framework Lifecycle

Use `$A.run()` to wrap any code that modifies a component outside the normal rerendering lifecycle. The `$A.run()` call ensures that the framework rerenders the modified component and processes any enqueued actions.


You don't need to use `$A.run()` if your code is executed as part of the framework's call stack; for example, your code is handling an event or in the callback for a client-side controller action.

An example of where you need to use `$A.run()` is calling `window.setTimeout()` in an event handler to execute some logic after a time delay. This puts your code outside the framework's call stack.

This sample sets the `visible` attribute on a component to `true` after a five-second delay.

```
window.setTimeout(function () {
    $A.run(function() {
        if (cmp.isValid()) {
            cmp.set("v.visible", true);
        }
    });
}, 5000);
```

Note how the code updating a component attribute is wrapped in `$A.run()`, which ensures that the framework rerenders the modified component.

 **Note:** Always add an `isValid()` check if you reference a component in asynchronous code, such as a timeout.

SEE ALSO:

[Handling Events with Client-Side Controllers](#)

[Firing Aura Events from Non-Aura Code](#)

[Events](#)

Validating Fields

You can validate fields using JavaScript. Typically, you validate the user input, identify any errors, and display the error messages.

Default Error Handling

The framework can handle and display errors using the default error component, `ui:inputDefaultError`. The following example shows how the framework handles a validation error and uses the default error component to display the error message.

Component source

```
<aura:component>
    Enter a number: <ui:inputNumber aura:id="inputCmp"/> <br/>
    <ui:button label="Submit" press="{!c.doAction}"/>
</aura:component>
```

Client-side controller source

```
{
    doAction : function(component) {
        var inputCmp = component.find("inputCmp");
        var value = inputCmp.get("v.value");

        // Is input numeric?
        if (isNaN(value)) {
            // Set error
            inputCmp.setValid("v.value", false);
            inputCmp.addErrors("v.value", [{message:"Input not a number: " + value}]);
        } else {
            // Clear error
            inputCmp.setValid("v.value", true);
        }
    }
}
```

```

    }
}

```

When you enter a value and click **Submit**, an action in the controller validates the input and displays an error message if the input is not a number. Entering a valid input clears the error. The controller invalidates the input value using `setValid(false)` and clears any error using `setValid(true)`. You can add error messages to the input value using `addError()`.

Custom Error Handling

`ui:input` and its child components can handle errors using its `onError` and `onClearErrors` attributes, which are wired to your custom error handlers defined in a controller. `onError` maps to a `ui:validationError` event, and `onClearErrors` maps to `ui:clearErrors`. The input components can use the `ui:updateError` event to update the default error component, `ui:inputDefaultError`.

The following example shows how you can handle a validation error using custom error handlers and display the error message using the default error component.

Component source

```

<aura:component>
    Enter a number: <ui:inputNumber aura:id="inputCmp" onError="{!c.handleError}"
onClearErrors="{!c.handleClearError}"/> <br/>
    <ui:button label="Submit" press="{!c.doAction}"/>
</aura:component>

```

Client-side controller source

```

{
    doAction : function(component, event) {
        var inputCmp = component.find("inputCmp");
        var value = inputCmp.get("v.value");

        // is input numeric?
        if (isNaN(value)) {
            // fire event that will set error
            var errorEvent = inputCmp.getEvent("onError");
            errorEvent.setParams({ "errors" : [{message:"Input not a number: " + value}]});

            errorEvent.fire();
        } else {
            // fire event that will clear error
            var clearErrorEvent = inputCmp.getEvent("onClearErrors");
            clearErrorEvent.fire();
        }
    },

    handleError: function(component, event){
        var inputCmp = component.find("inputCmp");
        var errorsObj = event.getParam("errors");

        /* do any custom error handling
        * logic desired here */

        // set error using default error component
        inputCmp.setValid("v.value", false);
    }
}

```

```

        inputCmp.addErrors(errorsObj);
        var updateErrorEvent = inputCmp.getEvent("updateError");
        updateErrorEvent.fire();
    },

    handleClearError: function(component, event) {
        var inputCmp = component.find("inputCmp");

        /* do any custom error handling
         * logic desired here */

        // clear error using default error component
        inputCmp.setValid("v.value", true);
        var updateErrorEvent = inputCmp.getEvent("updateError");
        updateErrorEvent.fire();
    }
}

```

When you enter a value and click **Submit**, an action in the controller executes. However, instead of letting the framework handle the errors, you have to provide a custom error handler using the `onError` attribute in the component. If the validation fails, `doAction` adds an error message using `setParams()` and fires your custom error handler. In the custom event handler, `handleError`, retrieve the errors by calling `getParam()` and invalidate the input value using `setValid(false)`. You can fire the `updateError` event to update the default error component.

Similarly, you can customize how you want to clear the errors by using the `onClearErrors` event. See the `handleClearError` handler in the controller for an example.

SEE ALSO:

[Handling Events with Client-Side Controllers](#)

[Component Events](#)

Throwing and Handling Errors

The framework gives you flexibility in handling unrecoverable and recoverable app errors in JavaScript code. For example, you can throw these errors when handling a server-side response using `action.setCallback()`.

Recoverable Errors

To handle recoverable errors, use a component, such as `ui:message` or `ui:panelDialog`, to tell the user about the problem.

This example shows you the basics of throwing and handling an error in a JavaScript controller. The error is thrown when you click the **throw error** button. An `aura:systemError` event handler calls a controller action to handle the error, which displays an error message using a `ui:outputText` component. Another button labeled **OK** lets you dismiss the error.

Component source

```

<aura:component>
    <aura:handler event="aura:systemError" action="{!c.showError}"/>

    <ui:button label="throw error" press="{!c.throwError}"/>
    <div aura:id="myError" class="isDisplayed message" >
        <ui:outputText aura:id="message" value=""/>
    </div>
</aura:component>

```

```

        <ui:button label="OK" press="{!c.hideError}"/>
    </div>
</aura:component>

```

Client-side controller source

```

({
    throwError : function(cmp, event){
        // create an error instance
        var error = new $A.auraFriendlyError();
        // set the error message to display
        error.data = {"myMessage": "Something went wrong! Please try again later."};
        throw error;
    },

    showError: function(cmp, event) {
        // handle the error by displaying a message
        var myError = cmp.find('myError');
        var message = cmp.find('message');

        var error = event.getParam('auraError');
        if (error) {
            // set the flag to handle the error
            error["handled"] = true;
            var output = cmp.find('errorText');
            $A.util.removeClass(myError, "isDisplayed");
            message.set("v.value", error.data["myMessage"]);
        }
    },

    hideError : function(cmp) {
        // hide the error message from view
        var myError = cmp.find('myError');
        $A.util.addClass(myError, "isDisplayed");
    }
})

```

CSS

```

.THIS.isDisplayed {
    display: none;
}

```

Before you handle the error, set `error["handled"] = true` to signal that you'll be providing your own error handler. Set the error message using `error.data["myMessage"]` to inform users of the error.

Unrecoverable Errors

Use `$A.auraError("error message here")` for unrecoverable errors, such as an error that prevents your app from starting successfully. It shows a stack trace on the page.



Note: `$A.error()` is deprecated and replaced by `$A.auraError()`.

This example shows you the basics of throwing an unrecoverable error in a JavaScript controller.

Component source

```
<aura:component>
  <ui:button label="throw error" press="{!c.throwError}"/>
</aura:component>
```

Client-side controller source

```
((
  throwError : function(component, event){
    throw new $A.auraError("Controller Error Test");
  }
}))
```

SEE ALSO:

[Validating Fields](#)

Calling Component Methods

Use `<aura:method>` to define a method as part of a component's API. This enables you to directly call a method in a component's client-side controller instead of firing and handling a component event. It also enables a parent component to call a method on a child component that it contains.

Use this syntax to call a method in JavaScript code.

```
cmp.sampleMethod(arg1, ... argN);
```

`cmp` is a reference to the component. `arg1, ... argN` is an optional comma-separated list of arguments passed to the method.

Let's look at an example of a component containing a button. The handler for the button calls a component method instead of firing and handling its own component event.

Here is the component source.

```
<!--docsample:auraMethod-->
<aura:component>
  <aura:method name="sampleMethod" action="{!c.doAction}" access="PUBLIC"
    description="Sample method with parameters">
    <aura:attribute name="param1" type="String" default="parameter 1" />
  </aura:method>

  <ui:button label="Press Me" press="{!c.handleClick}"/>
</aura:component>
```

Here is the client-side controller.

```
/*auraMethodController.js*/
({
  handleClick : function(cmp, event) {
    console.log("in handleClick");
    // call the method declared by <aura:method> in the markup
    cmp.sampleMethod("1");
  },

  doAction : function(cmp, event) {
```



```

    var params = event.getParam('arguments');
    if (params) {
        var param1 = params.param1;
        console.log("param1: " + param1);
        // add your code here
    }
},
}))

```

This simple example just logs the parameter passed to the method.

Note that the `<aura:method>` tag set `name="sampleMethod"` and `action="{!c.doAction}"` so the method is called by `cmp.sampleMethod()` and handled by `doAction()` in the controller.

Using Inherited Methods

A sub component that extends a super component has access to any methods defined in the super component.

An interface can also include an `<aura:method>` tag. A component that implements the interface can access the method.

SEE ALSO:

[aura:method](#)

[Component Events](#)

Making API Calls

You can make API calls from client-side code, but it's not a best practice. Make API calls from server-side controllers instead to maximize performance.

The framework uses an `XMLHttpRequest` (XHR) to communicate from the client to the server and server-side actions are designed to minimize network traffic and provide a smoother user experience.

Batching of Actions

The framework queues up actions before sending them to the server. This mechanism is largely transparent to you when you're writing code but it enables the framework to minimize network traffic by batching multiple actions into one request. For more information, see [Queueing of Server-Side Actions](#) on page 155.

Abortable Actions

You can mark an action as abortable to make it potentially abortable while it's queued to be sent to the server or not yet returned from the server. This is useful for actions that you'd like to abort when there is a newer abortable action in the queue. We recommend that you only use abortable actions for read-only operations as they are not guaranteed to be sent to the server. For more information, see [Abortable Actions](#) on page 156.

Storable Actions

A server-side controller action can have its response stored in the client-side cache by the framework. This can be useful if you want your app to be functional for devices that temporarily don't have a network connection. For more information, see [Storable Actions](#) on page 160.

Background Actions

An action can be marked as a background action. This is useful when you want your app to remain responsive to a user while it executes a low priority, long-running action. For more information, see [Background Actions](#) on page 157.

CHAPTER 13 JavaScript Cookbook

In this chapter ...

- Invoking Actions on Component Initialization
- Detecting Data Changes
- Finding Components by ID
- Dynamically Creating Components
- Dynamically Adding Event Handlers
- Creating a Document-Level Event Handler
- Dynamically Showing or Hiding Markup
- Adding and Removing Styles

This section includes code snippets and samples that can be used in various JavaScript files.

Invoking Actions on Component Initialization

You can update a component or fire an event after component construction but before rendering.

Component source

```
<aura:component>
  <aura:attribute name="setMeOnInit" type="String" default="default value" />
  <aura:handler name="init" value="{!this}" action="{!c.doInit}"/>

  <p>This value is set in the controller after the component initializes and before
  rendering.</p>
  <p><b>{!v.setMeOnInit}</b></p>

</aura:component>
```

Client-side controller source

```
((
  doInit: function(cmp) {
    // Set the attribute value.
    // You could also fire an event here instead.
    cmp.set("v.setMeOnInit", "controller init magic!");
  }
})
```

Let's look at the **Component source** to see how this works. The magic happens in this line.

```
<aura:handler name="init" value="{!this}" action="{!c.doInit}"/>
```

This registers an `init` event handler for the component. `init` is a predefined event sent to every component. After the component is initialized, the `doInit` action is called in the component's controller. In this sample, the controller action sets an attribute value, but it could do something more interesting, such as firing an event.



Note: You should never fire an event in a renderer so using the `init` event is a good alternative for many scenarios.

Setting `value="{!this}"` marks this as a value event. You should always use this setting for an `init` event.

SEE ALSO:

- [Handling Events with Client-Side Controllers](#)
- [Client-Side Rendering to the DOM](#)
- [Component Attributes](#)
- [Detecting Data Changes](#)

Detecting Data Changes

Automatically firing an event

You can configure a component to automatically invoke a client-side controller action when a value in one of the component's attributes changes. When the value changes, the `valueChange.evt` event is automatically fired. The `valueChange.evt` is an event with `type="VALUE"` that takes in two attributes, `value` and `index`.

Manually firing an event

In contrast, other component and application events are fired manually by `event.fire()` in client-side controllers.

For example, in the component, define a handler with `name="change"`.

```
<aura:handler name="change" value="{!v.items}" action="{!c.itemsChange}"/>
```

A component can have multiple `<aura:handler name="change">` tags to detect changes to different attributes.

In the controller, define the action for the handler.

```
((
  itemsChange: function(cmp, evt) {
    var v = evt.getParam("value");
    if (v === cmp.get("v.items")) {
      //do something
    }
  }
}))
```

When a change occurs to a value that is represented by the `change` handler, the framework handles the firing of the event and rerendering of the component. For more information, see [aura:valueChange](#) on page 249.

SEE ALSO:

[Invoking Actions on Component Initialization](#)

Finding Components by ID

Retrieve a component by its ID in JavaScript code. For example, you can add a local ID of `button1` to the `ui:button` component.

```
<ui:button aura:id="button1" label="button1"/>
```

You can find the component by calling `cmp.find("button1")`, where `cmp` is a reference to the component containing the button. The `find()` function has one parameter, which is the local ID of a component within the markup.

You can also retrieve a component by its global ID, which is an ID generated during runtime.

```
var comp = $A.getCmp(globalId);
```

For example, the `ui:button` component renders as an HTML button element with this markup.

```
<button class="default uiButton" data-aura-rendered-by="30:463;a">...</button>
```

Retrieve the component by using `$A.getCmp("30:463;a")`.

SEE ALSO:

[Component IDs](#)

[Value Providers](#)

Dynamically Creating Components

Create a component dynamically in your client-side JavaScript code by using the `$A.createComponent()` method.

 **Note:** Use `createComponent()` instead of the deprecated `newComponent()`, `newComponentAsync()`, and `newComponentDeprecated()` methods.

The syntax is:

```
createComponent(String type, Object attributes, function callback)
```

1. `type`—The type of component to create; for example, `"ui:button"`.
2. `attributes`—A map of attributes for the component.
3. `callback`—The callback to invoke after the component is created. The new component is passed in to the callback as a parameter.

For a full description of all the parameters, see the JavaScript API reference in the [Reference Doc App](#).

Let's add a dynamically created button to this sample component.

```
<!--docsample:createComponent-->
<aura:component>
    <aura:handler name="init" value="{!this}" action="{!c.doInit}"/>


    <p>Dynamically created button</p>
    {!v.body}

</aura:component>
```

The client-side controller calls `$A.createComponent()` to create the button with a local ID and a handler for the `press` event. The button is appended to the `body` of `docsample:createComponent`.

```
/*createComponentController.js*/
({
    doInit : function(cmp) {
        $A.createComponent(
            "ui:button",
            {
                "aura:id": "findableAuraId",
                "label": "Press Me",
                "press": cmp.getReference("c.handlePress")
            },
            function(newButton) {
                //Add the new button to the body array
                if (cmp.isValid()) {
                    var body = cmp.get("v.body");
                    body.push(newButton);
                    cmp.set("v.body", body);
                }
            }
        );
    },

    handlePress : function(cmp) {
        console.log("button pressed");
    }
})
```

 **Note:** `docsample:createComponent` contains a `{!v.body}` expression. When you use `cmp.set("v.body", ...)` to set the component body, you must explicitly include `{!v.body}` in your component markup.

To retrieve the new button you created, use `body[0]`.

```
var newbody = cmp.get("v.body");
var newCmp = newbody[0].find("findableAuraId");
```

Creating Nested Components

To dynamically create a component in the body of another component, use `$A.createComponent()` to create the components. In the function callback, nest the components by setting the inner component in the `body` of the outer component. This example creates a `ui:outputText` component in the body of a `ui:message` component.

```
$A.createComponent([
  ["ui:message",{
    "title" : "Sample Thrown Error",
    "severity" : "error",
  }],
  ["ui:outputText",{
    "value" : e.message
  }]
],
function(components, status){
  if (status === "SUCCESS") {
    var message = components[0];
    var outputText = components[1];
    // set the body of the ui:message to be the ui:outputText
    message.set("v.body", outputText);
  }
});
```

Declaring Dependencies

The framework automatically tracks dependencies between definitions, such as components. However, some dependencies aren't easily discoverable by the framework; for example, if you dynamically create a component that is not directly referenced in the component's markup. To tell the framework about such a dynamic dependency, use the `<aura:dependency>` tag. This ensures that the component and its dependencies are sent to the client, when needed.

For more information about usage, see [aura:dependency](#) on page 238.

Server-Side Dependencies

The `createComponent()` method supports both client-side and server-side component creation. If no server-side dependencies are found, this method is run synchronously. The top-level component determines whether a server request is necessary for component creation.



Note: Creating components where the top-level components don't have server dependencies but nested inner components do is not currently supported. For such cases, set `render="server"` on the top-level `aura:component` or `aura:application` tag.

Server-side dependencies include server-side models, renderers, or providers for the component and its super components. Any server-side models for the component and its super components is a server-side dependency. A server-side controller is not a server-side dependency for component creation as controller actions are only called after the component has been created.

A component with server-side dependencies is created on the server, even if it's preloaded. If there are no server dependencies and the definition already exists on the client via preloading or declared dependencies, no server call is made. To force a server request, set the `forceServer` parameter to `true`.

If a component has both a server-side and client-side renderer or provider, the client-side renderer or provider is used.

SEE ALSO:

[Invoking Actions on Component Initialization](#)

[Dynamically Adding Event Handlers](#)

Dynamically Adding Event Handlers

You can dynamically add a handler for an event that a component fires. The component can be created dynamically on the client-side or fetched from the server at runtime.

This sample code adds an event handler to instances of `docsample:sampleComponent`.

```
addNewHandler : function(cmp, event) {
    var cmpArr = cmp.find({ instancesOf : "docsample:sampleComponent" });
    for (var i = 0; i < cmpArr.length; i++) {
        var outputCmpArr = cmpArr[i];
        outputCmpArr.addHandler("someAction", cmp, "c.someAction");
    }
}
```

You can also add an event handler to a component that is created dynamically in the callback function of `$A.createComponent()`. For more information, see [Dynamically Creating Components](#).

`addHandler()` adds an event handler to a component.

Note that you can't force a component to start firing events that it doesn't fire. `c.someAction` can be an action in a controller in the component's hierarchy. `someAction` and `cmp` refers to the event name and value provider respectively. `someAction` must match the `name` attribute value in the `aura:registerEvent` or `aura:handler` tag. Refer to the JavaScript API reference for a full list of methods and arguments.

SEE ALSO:

[Handling Events with Client-Side Controllers](#)

[Creating Server-Side Logic with Controllers](#)

[Client-Side Rendering to the DOM](#)

Creating a Document-Level Event Handler

To create a document-level event handler, call `addDocumentLevelHandler(String eventName, Function callback, Boolean autoEnable)`. This creates and returns a handler object that can be enabled and disabled with `setEnabled(Boolean)`.



Note: Document-level event handlers are global objects so using many of them could have performance implications.

An example of when a document-level event handler can be useful is with modal dialogs that should close when someone clicks outside of them. Here is an example of how to add a document-level event handler. This code is from the `datePickerHelper.js` code that is part of the `datePicker` component:

```
updateGlobalEventListeners: function(component) {
    var concreteCmp = component.getConcreteComponent();
    var visible = concreteCmp.get("v.visible");
    if (!concreteCmp._clickStart) {
        concreteCmp._clickStart = concreteCmp.addDocumentLevelHandler(
            this.getOnClickEventProp("onClickStartEvent"),
            this.getOnClickStartFunction(component),
            visible);
        concreteCmp._clickEnd = concreteCmp.addDocumentLevelHandler(
            this.getOnClickEventProp("onClickEndEvent"),
            this.getOnClickEndFunction(component),
            visible);
    } else {
        concreteCmp._clickStart.setEnabled(visible);
        concreteCmp._clickEnd.setEnabled(visible);
    }
},
```

The document-level event handlers will be cleaned up automatically when the component is destroyed. If you need to destroy the document-level event handler earlier, call `removeDocumentLevelHandler()`.

Dynamically Showing or Hiding Markup

Use CSS to toggle markup visibility. You could use the `<aura:if>` or `<aura:renderIf>` tags to do the same thing but we recommend using CSS as it's the more standard approach.

This example uses `$A.util.toggleClass(element, 'class')` to toggle visibility of markup.

```
<!--docsample:toggleCss-->
<aura:component>
    <ui:button label="Toggle" press="{!c.toggle}"/>
    <p aura:id="text">Now you see me</p>
</aura:component>
```

```
/*toggleCssController.js*/
({
    toggle : function(component, event, helper) {
        var toggleText = component.find("text");
        $A.util.toggleClass(toggleText, "toggle");
    }
})
```

```
/*toggleCss.css*/
.THIS.toggle {
    display: none;
}
```


Click the **Toggle** button to hide or show the text by toggling the CSS class.

SEE ALSO:

[Handling Events with Client-Side Controllers](#)

[Component Attributes](#)

[Adding and Removing Styles](#)

Adding and Removing Styles

You can add or remove a CSS style to an element during runtime.

The following demo shows how to append and remove a CSS style from an element.

Component source

```
<aura:component>
  <div aura:id="changeIt">Change Me!</div><br />
  <ui:button press="{!c.applyCSS}" label="Add Style" />
  <ui:button press="{!c.removeCSS}" label="Remove Style" />
</aura:component>
```

CSS source

```
.THIS.changeMe {
  background-color:yellow;
  width:200px;
}
```

Client-side controller source

```
{
  applyCSS: function(cmp, event) {
    var el = cmp.find('changeIt');
    $A.util.addClass(el.getElement(), 'changeMe');
  },

  removeCSS: function(cmp, event) {
    var el = cmp.find('changeIt');
    $A.util.removeClass(el.getElement(), 'changeMe');
  }
}
```

The buttons in this demo are wired to controller actions that append or remove the CSS styles. To append a CSS style to an element, use `$A.util.addClass(element, 'class')`. Similarly, remove the class by using `$A.util.removeClass(element, 'class')` in your controller. `cmp.find()` locates the element using the local ID, denoted by `aura:id="changeIt"` in this demo.


Toggling a Class

To toggle a class, use `$A.util.toggleClass(element, 'class')`, which adds or removes the class. The `element` parameter can be an HTML element or a component.

To hide or show markup dynamically, see [Dynamically Showing or Hiding Markup](#) on page 142.

To conditionally set a class for an array of elements, pass in the array to `$A.util.toggleClass()`.

```
mapClasses: function(arr, cssClass) {  
    for(var element in arr) {  
        $A.util.toggleClass(arr[element], cssClass);  
    }  
}
```

 **Note:** If the utility function is not used inside `afterRender()` or `render()`, passing in `cmp.getElement()` might result in your class not being applied when the components are rerendered. In such cases, passing in the component `cmp` is recommended over passing in the HTML element. For more information, see [Events Fired During the Rendering Lifecycle](#) on page 107.

Refer to the JavaScript API Reference for more utility functions for working with DOM elements.

SEE ALSO:

[Handling Events with Client-Side Controllers](#)

[CSS in Components](#)

[Component Bundles](#)

CHAPTER 14 Using Java

In this chapter ...

- [Essential Terminology](#)
- [Reading Initial Component Data with Models](#)
- [Creating Server-Side Logic with Controllers](#)
- [Server-Side Rendering to the DOM](#)
- [Server-Side Runtime Binding of Components](#)
- [Serializing Exceptions](#)

Use Java to write server-side Aura code. Services are the API in front of Aura. The `Aura` class is the entry point in Java for accessing server-side services.

Your app can contain the following types of Java files.

- Models for initializing component data
- Server-side controllers for handling requests from client-side controllers
- Server-Side Providers for returning a concrete component at runtime for an abstract component or an interface in markup

SEE ALSO:

[Java Models](#)
[Creating Server-Side Logic with Controllers](#)
[Server-Side Runtime Binding of Components](#)
[Component Request Lifecycle](#)
[Using Object-Oriented Development](#)

Essential Terminology

When you write Java code in Aura, it's essential to understand some basic concepts of the framework.

Term	Description
Definition	<p>Each definition describes metadata for an element, such as a component, event, controller, or model. A large part of Aura is a registry of definitions for its various elements.</p> <p>A definition's metadata can include a name, location of origin, and descriptor (DefDescriptor, the primary key of the definition).</p>
DefDescriptor	<p>A DefDescriptor acts as a key for a definition in a registry. It's an Aura class that contains the metadata for any definition used in Aura, such as a component, action, or event. In the example of a model, it is a nicely parsed description of <code>model="java://myPackage.MyClass"</code> with methods to retrieve the language, class name, and package name. Rather than passing a more heavyweight definition around in code, Aura usually passes around a DefDescriptor instead.</p> <p>The qualified name for a DefDescriptor has a format of either <code>prefix://namespace:name</code> or <code>prefix://namespace.name</code>. For example, <code>js://ui.button</code>.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <code>prefix</code>: Defines the language, such as JavaScript or Java • <code>namespace</code>: Corresponds to the package name or XML namespace • <code>name</code>: Corresponds to the class name or local name
Instance	<p>An instance represents the data for a component, event, or action. The component data is contained in its model and attributes.</p>
Registry	<p>Registries store metadata definitions. Some registries last for the duration of a request, while others are cached for the lifetime of the app server. They may be created during the request process and destroyed when the server completes the request. A master definition registry contains a list of registries for each Aura resource.</p>

Reading Initial Component Data with Models

A model is a component's main source for dynamic data.

Use a model to read your initial component data and display the data on the user interface. You can create a model using Java or JSON. For example, a Java model could read the component's data from a database. A JSON model reads your initial component data from a JSON resource.

Java Models

Use a Java model to read a component's data from a dynamic source, such as a database. The component generates an appropriate user interface from the model's data.

The value provider for a model is denoted by `m`. For example, the label in this button component is retrieved from the model of the component containing the `<ui:button>` tag. The value for the label is evaluated when the component renders.

```
<ui:button label="{!m.myLabel}"/>
```

On the server side, Aura's model is more of a model initializer compared to the usage of models in other MVC frameworks. The model is instantiated when the component is first requested. Perform any necessary operations to gather state, such as making database queries or external API callouts, in the model's constructor.

When the component is serialized to the client, the `@AuraEnabled` getters are executed, and their results are serialized as name-value pairs. This serialized map becomes the basis for the initial state of the model on the client.



Note: You can't create a new component dynamically in a model class using `Aura.getInstanceService().getInstance()`.

Wiring Up the Model

The `aura:component` tag contains a `model` system attribute that wires it to the Java model. For example:

```
<aura:component model="java://org.auraframework.demo.notes.models.TrivialModel">
```

Accessing the Model in Markup

Let's look at simple usage of a model in the markup of a component.

```
<aura:component model="java://org.auraframework.demo.notes.models.TrivialModel">
  <aura:attribute name="name" type="String" required="true" default="Michelle" />

  <!-- Use the "m." prefix to access any fields that are annotated with
  @AuraEnabled in the model class -->
  <h1>Title : {!m.title}</h1>

  <!-- Use v.name to directly access the component's name attribute.
  Remember that you use v to access the component's attribute values -->
  <h2>Name : {!v.name}</h2>
</aura:component>
```

The `{!m.title}` expression returns the result of the `getTitle()` getter method in the component's model class. The `getTitle()` method must be prefixed with the `@AuraEnabled` annotation.

Java Model class

This model is simple as it doesn't read in data from a persistent data store but it demonstrates some basics, including accessing a component's attribute in the model.

```
package org.auraframework.demo.models;

import org.auraframework.instance.BaseComponent;
import org.auraframework.system.Annotations.AuraEnabled;
import org.auraframework.system.Annotations.Model;
import org.auraframework.throwable.quickfix.QuickFixException;

@Model
public class TrivialModel throws QuickFixException {

    private String title;

    // The constructor is called during the construction of each instance of the model
    // The constructor must be public
```

```
public TrivialModel() {
    // This retrieves the component for this model as a Java object
    BaseComponent cmp =
        Aura.getContextService().getCurrentContext().getCurrentComponent();

    // Retrieve the name attribute of the component
    String name = (String)cmp.get("v.name");

    /* Do any queries or data generation in the constructor of your model.
     * In this sample, we have a trivial initialization for the title field.
     * A real-world scenario would read the data from a persistent data store. */
    title = "Welcome to " + name;
}

// Use @AuraEnabled to enable client- and server-side access to the title field
@AuraEnabled
public String getTitle() {
    return title;
}
}
```

Java Annotations

These annotations are available in Java models.

Annotation	Description
@Model	Denotes that a Java class is a model.
@AuraEnabled	Enables client- and server-side access to a getter method. This means that you only expose data that you have explicitly annotated and avoids accidentally exposing fields. Other fields are not available.

Learn More

For a more in-depth example of a model that initializes its data from a database, see the `NoteListModel` class and the `noteList.cmp` component in the Aura Note sample app.

SEE ALSO:

- [JSON Models](#)
- [Accessing Models in JavaScript](#)
- [Creating Server-Side Logic with Controllers](#)
- [Server-Side Runtime Binding of Components](#)
- [Mocking Java Models](#)

JSON Models

Use a JSON model to read your initial component data in Aura from a JSON resource.

To initialize your component from a more dynamic source, such as a database, use a Java model instead.


Wiring Up the Model

There are a few ways to wire up a JSON model. A JSON model is auto-wired if it's in the component bundle and follows the naming convention, `<componentName>Model.js`.

You can explicitly declare a model in the `aura:component` tag by including a `model` system attribute with the format `model="js://<namespace>.<componentName>".` This enables reuse of a model from another component. For example, this component uses the auto-wired model for `auradocs.sampleComponent` in `auradocs/sampleComponent/sampleComponentModel.js`.

```
<aura:component model="js://auradocs.sampleComponent
```


If you explicitly declare a `model` system attribute, it takes precedence over a model in the component bundle.

 **Note:** A component can only have a JSON or Java model, but not both.

Sample JSON Model

Here is a sample JSON model.

```
{
  "bool" : true,
  "num" : 5,
  "str" : "My name is JSON",
  "list" : []
}
```

 **Note:** Don't use `null` for model values. Use `[]` for an empty array, `""` for an empty string, or zero for a number. This enables the framework to determine which type of value wrapper to initialize. Due to a current limitation, don't use `{ }` for an empty object.

Accessing the Model in Markup

Here is simple usage of a model in the markup of a component.

```
<-- This component uses an auto-wired model
   as this aura:component tag has no model system attribute -->
<aura:component>
  boolean: {!m.bool}
  number: {!m.num}
  string: {!m.str}
  list length: {!m.list.length}
</aura:component>
```

SEE ALSO:

[Java Models](#)

[Accessing Models in JavaScript](#)

[Component Bundles](#)

Accessing Models in JavaScript

Use the value provider, `m`, to access a Java or JSON model in JavaScript code. For example:

```
var title = cmp.get("m.title");  
alert("Title: " + title);
```

To update the model in JavaScript code, use `set()`. For example:

```
cmp.set("m.myLabel", "updated label");
```

SEE ALSO:

[Java Models](#)

[JSON Models](#)

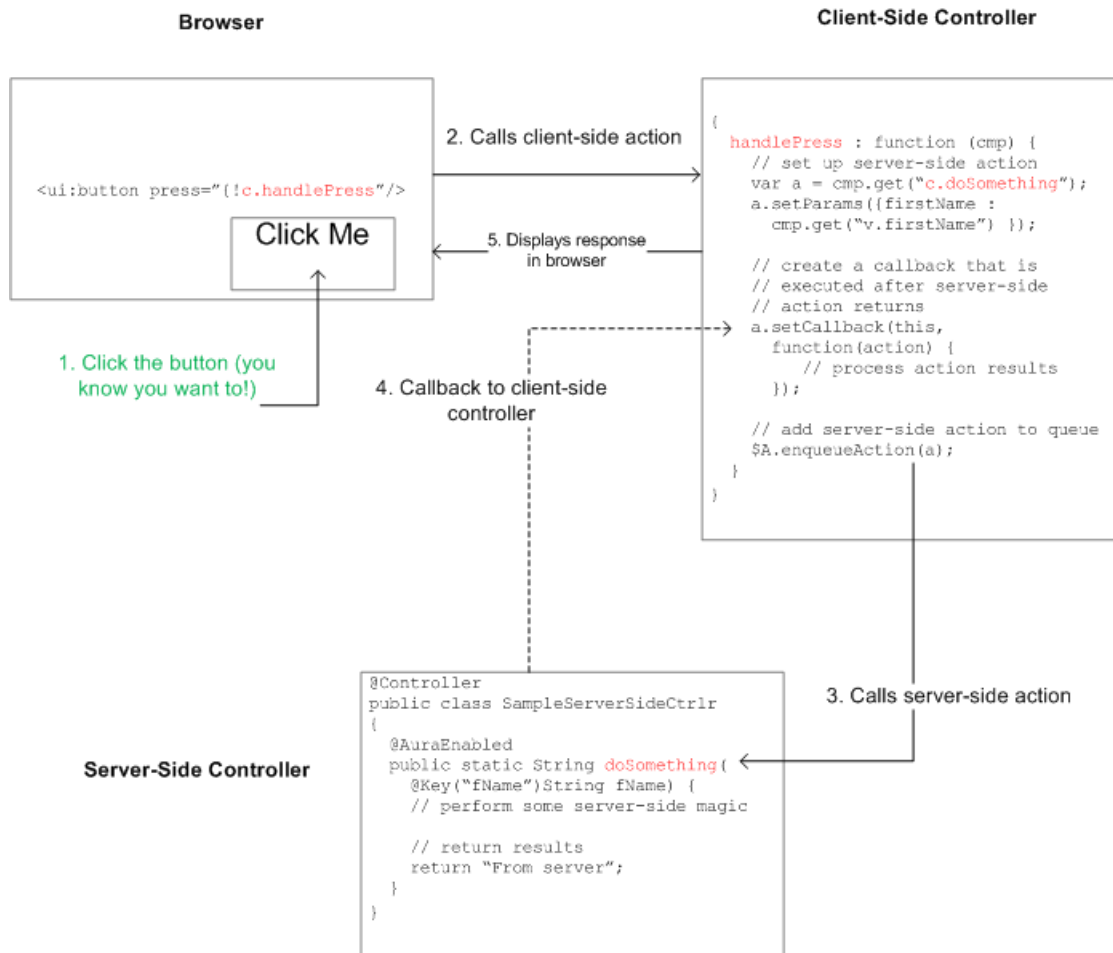
[Working with Attribute Values in JavaScript](#)

Creating Server-Side Logic with Controllers

The framework supports client-side and server-side controllers. An event is always wired to a client-side controller action, which can in turn call a server-side controller action. For example, a client-side controller might handle an event and call a server-side controller action to persist data to a database.

Server-side actions need to make a round trip, from the client to the server and back again, so they are usually completed more slowly than client-side actions.

This diagram shows the flow from browser to client-side controller to server-side controller.



The `press` attribute wires the button to the `handlePress` action of the client-side controller by using `c.handlePress`. The client-side action name must match everything after the `c`.

For more details on the process of calling a server-side action, see [Calling a Server-Side Action](#) on page 153.

For an in-depth example of a server-side controller that interacts with a database, see the `NoteViewController` class in the Aura Note sample app.

IN THIS SECTION:

[Creating a Java Server-Side Controller](#)

Create a server-side controller in Java. Use the `@Controller` annotation before a Java class definition to denote a server-side controller.

[Calling a Server-Side Action](#)

Call a server-side controller action from a client-side controller. In the client-side controller, you set a callback, which is called after the server-side action is completed. A server-side action can return any object containing serializable JSON data.

[Queueing of Server-Side Actions](#)

The framework queues up actions before sending them to the server. This mechanism is largely transparent to you when you're writing code but it enables the framework to minimize network traffic by batching multiple actions into one request.

Abortable Actions

You can mark an action as abortable to make it potentially abortable while it's queued to be sent to the server or not yet returned from the server. This is useful for actions that you'd like to abort when there is a newer abortable action in the queue. We recommend that you only use abortable actions for read-only operations as they are not guaranteed to be sent to the server.

Background Actions

An action can be marked as a background action. This is useful when you want your app to remain responsive to a user while it executes a low priority, long-running action.

Caboose Actions

Use a caboose server action to send data to the server that is not time-sensitive, such as logging, performance statistics, or click tracking data.

Storable Actions

A server-side controller action can have its response stored in the client-side cache by the framework. This can be useful if you want your app to be functional for devices that temporarily don't have a network connection.

Creating a Java Server-Side Controller

Create a server-side controller in Java. Use the `@Controller` annotation before a Java class definition to denote a server-side controller. This Java controller contains a `serverEcho` action that simply prepends a string to the value passed in. This is a simple example that allows us to verify in the client that the value was returned by the server.

 **Tip:** Don't store component state in your controller. Store it in a component's attribute or model instead.

```

package org.auraframework.demo.controllers;

@Controller
public class TrivialServerSideController {

    //Use @AuraEnabled to enable client- and server-side access to the method
    @AuraEnabled
    public static String serverEcho(@Key("firstName")String firstName) {
        return ("From server: " + firstName);
    }
}

```

Java Annotations

These Java annotations are available in server-side controllers.

`@Controller`

Denotes that a Java class is a server-side controller.

`@AuraEnabled`

Enables client- and server-side access to a controller method. This means that you only expose methods that you have explicitly annotated.

`@Key`

Sets a key for each argument in a method for a server-side action. When you use `setParams` to set parameters in the client-side controller, match the JSON element name with the identifier for the `@Key` annotation. Note that we used `a.setParams({ firstName : component.get("v.firstName") });` in the client-side controller that calls our sample server-side controller.

The `@Key` annotation means that you don't have to create an overloaded version of the method if you want to call it with different numbers of arguments. The framework simply passes in `null` for any unspecified arguments.

You can also indicate which parameters are loggable by setting the optional second attribute, `loggable`, to `true`. This example shows how to specify that the `config` and `pageSize` parameters should be included in the log:

```
public static Map<String, Object> refreshFeed(
    @Key(value = "config", loggable = true) Object config,
    @Key(value = "pageSize", loggable = true) Integer pageSize)
    throws SQLException {
    ...
}
```

`@BackgroundAction`

Marks the action as a background action.

Wiring Up a Java Server-Side Controller

The component must include a controller attribute that wires it to the server-side Java controller. For example:

```
<aura:component
controller="java://org.auraframework.demo.controllers.TrivialServerSideController">
```

SEE ALSO:

[Background Actions](#)

[Component Markup](#)

Calling a Server-Side Action

Call a server-side controller action from a client-side controller. In the client-side controller, you set a callback, which is called after the server-side action is completed. A server-side action can return any object containing serializable JSON data.

A client-side controller is a JavaScript object in object-literal notation containing name-value pairs. Each name corresponds to a client-side action. Its value is the function code associated with the action.

Let's say that you want to trigger a server-call from a component. The following component contains a button that's wired to a client-side controller `echo` action. `SimpleServerSideController` contains a method that returns a string passed in from the client-side controller.

```
<aura:component controller="SimpleServerSideController">
    <aura:attribute name="firstName" type="String" default="world"/>
    <ui:button label="Call server" press="{!c.echo}"/>
</aura:component>
```

The following client-side controller includes an `echo` action that executes a `serverEcho` method on a server-side controller. The client-side controller sets a callback action that is invoked after the server-side action returns. In this case, the callback function alerts the user with the value returned from the server. `action.setParams({ firstName : cmp.get("v.firstName") })`; retrieves the `firstName` attribute from the component and sets the value of the `firstName` argument on the server-side controller's `serverEcho` method.

```
({
    "echo" : function(cmp) {
        // create a one-time use instance of the serverEcho action
```

```

// in the server-side controller
var action = cmp.get("c.serverEcho");
action.setParams({ firstName : cmp.get("v.firstName") });

// Create a callback that is executed after
// the server-side action returns
action.setCallback(this, function(response) {
    var state = response.getState();
    // This callback doesn't reference cmp. If it did,
    // you should run an isValid() check
    //if (cmp.isValid() && state === "SUCCESS") {
    if (state === "SUCCESS") {
        // Alert the user with the value returned
        // from the server
        alert("From server: " + response.getReturnValue());

        // You would typically fire a event here to trigger
        // client-side notification that the server-side
        // action is complete
    }
    //else if (cmp.isValid() && state === "INCOMPLETE") {
    else if (state === "INCOMPLETE") {
        // do something
    }
    //else if (cmp.isValid() && state === "ERROR") {
    else if (state === "ERROR") {
        var errors = response.getError();
        if (errors) {
            $A.logf("Errors", errors);
            if (errors[0] && errors[0].message) {
                $A.error("Error message: " +
                    errors[0].message);
            }
        } else {
            $A.error("Unknown error");
        }
    }
});

// optionally set storable, abortable, background flag here

// A client-side action could cause multiple events,
// which could trigger other events and
// other server-side action calls.
// $A.enqueueAction adds the server-side action to the queue.
$A.enqueueAction(action);
}
})

```

In the client-side controller, we use the value provider of `c` to invoke a server-side controller action. This is the same syntax as we use in markup to invoke a client-side controller action. The `cmp.get("c.serverEcho")` call indicates that we are calling the `serverEcho` method in the server-side controller. The method name in the server-side controller must match everything after the `c.` in the client-side call.

Use `$A.enqueueAction(action)` to add the server-side controller action to the queue of actions to be executed. All actions that are enqueued this way will be run at the end of the event loop. Rather than sending a separate request for each individual action, the framework processes the event chain and executes the action in the queue after batching up related requests. The actions are asynchronous and have callbacks. The `runAfter` method is deprecated.

 **Note:** Always add an `isValid()` check if you reference a component in asynchronous code, such as a callback.

Action States

The possible action states are:

NEW

The action was created but is not in progress yet

RUNNING

The action is in progress

SUCCESS

The action executed successfully

ERROR


The server returned an error

INCOMPLETE

The server didn't return a response. The server might be down or the client might be offline.

ABORTED

The action was aborted

 **Note:** `setCallback()` has a third parameter that registers the action state that will invoke the callback. If you don't specify the third argument for `setCallback()`, it defaults to registering the `SUCCESS`, `INCOMPLETE`, and `ERROR` states. To set a callback for another state, such as `ABORTED`, you can call `setCallback()` multiple times with the action state set explicitly in the third argument. For example:

```
action.setCallback(this, function(response) { ... }, "ABORTED");
```

SEE ALSO:

[Handling Events with Client-Side Controllers](#)

[Queueing of Server-Side Actions](#)

Queueing of Server-Side Actions

The framework queues up actions before sending them to the server. This mechanism is largely transparent to you when you're writing code but it enables the framework to minimize network traffic by batching multiple actions into one request.

Event processing can generate a tree of events if an event handler fires more events. The framework processes the event tree and adds every action that needs to be executed on the server to a queue.

When the tree of events and all the client-side actions are processed, the framework batches actions from the queue into a message before sending it to the server. A message is essentially a wrapper around a list of actions.

There are some properties that you can set on an action to influence how the framework manages the action while it's in the queue waiting to be sent to the server. For more information, see:

- [Abortable Actions](#) on page 156

- [Background Actions](#) on page 157
- [Caboose Actions](#) on page 160
- [Storable Actions](#) on page 160

Abortable Actions

You can mark an action as abortable to make it potentially abortable while it's queued to be sent to the server or not yet returned from the server. This is useful for actions that you'd like to abort when there is a newer abortable action in the queue. We recommend that you only use abortable actions for read-only operations as they are not guaranteed to be sent to the server.

A set of actions for a single transaction, such as a click callback, are queued together to be sent to the server. If a user starts another transaction, for example by clicking another navigation item, all abortable actions are removed from the queue. The aborted actions are not sent to the server and their state is set to `ABORTED`.

An abortable action is sent to the server and executed normally unless it hasn't returned from the server when a subsequent abortable action is added to the queue.

If some actions have been sent but not yet returned from the server, they will complete, but only the callback logic associated with the `ABORTED` state (`action.getState() === "ABORTED"`) will be executed. This enables components to optionally log a message or clean up if they had an aborted action.



Note: There is no requirement that the most recent abortable action has to be identical to the previous abortable actions. The most recent action just has to be marked as abortable.

Marking an Action as Abortable

Mark a server-side action as abortable by using the `setAbortable()` method on the `Action` object in JavaScript. For example:

```
var action = cmp.get("c.serverEcho");
action.setAbortable();
```

`setCallback()` has a third parameter that registers the action state that will invoke the callback. If you don't specify the third argument for `setCallback()`, it defaults to registering the `SUCCESS`, `INCOMPLETE`, and `ERROR` states. To check for aborted actions in your callback and take appropriate action, such as logging the aborted action, call `setCallback()` with the `ABORTED` state set explicitly in the third argument. For example:

```
// Process default action states
action.setCallback(this, function(response) {
    var state = response.getState();
    if (state === "SUCCESS") {
        // Alert the user with the value returned from the server
        alert("From server: " + response.getReturnValue());
    }
    // process other action states
});
// Explicitly register callback for ABORTED
action.setCallback(this,
    function(response) {
        alert("The action was aborted");
    },
    "ABORTED"
);
```

Rapid Clicking

Imagine a navigation menu where each action is a potentially slow request to the server. A user may click on several navigation items quickly so that none of the server responses return before the subsequent click. If all the actions are marked as abortable, none of the callbacks will be called except for the last click. This improves user experience by avoiding flickering due to sequential rendering of multiple server responses.

Progressive Loading

Sometimes, you might want to do a progressive loading of data where the first set of items is loaded, followed by subsequent data loads after the rendering of the first set is complete. You can do this by calling a second set of actions after a delay, and using the `setParentAction()` method in the `Action` object to associate each action in the second set with one of the actions in the first set. This ensures that the second set of actions will abort if the user navigates away.

SEE ALSO:

[Creating Server-Side Logic with Controllers](#)

[Queueing of Server-Side Actions](#)

[Calling a Server-Side Action](#)

Background Actions

An action can be marked as a background action. This is useful when you want your app to remain responsive to a user while it executes a low priority, long-running action.

The framework supports background actions as well as foreground actions, which are the default. Each background action is sent in its own request and is executed in the order that it's received. This is different from foreground actions. Multiple queued foreground actions are batched in a single request to minimize network traffic.

When the server-side actions in the queue are executed, the foreground actions are executed first and then the background actions are executed. Background actions run in parallel with foreground actions and may come back in either order.

The framework throttles foreground and background actions separately. This means that the number of long-running background server-side actions running at a time can be controlled. Throttling is done automatically, it is not user controlled, and the number of background actions allowed is three. Even with separate throttling, background actions might affect performance in some conditions, such as if the browser is doing many fetches from servers.

To set an action as a background action, call the `setBackground()` method on the action object in JavaScript. This example shows how foreground and background actions are executed.

```
<!-- This component shows two buttons that triggers
      foreground and background actions.
      The results of the actions are printed below the buttons. -->

<aura:component controller="java://org.auraframework.docs.echoController">
  <aura:attribute name="echoes" type="String[]" />
  <ui:button label="Foreground" press="{!c.doForeground}" /><br/>
  <ui:button label="Background" press="{!c.doBackground}" /><br/>

  <aura:iteration items="{!v.echoes}" var="echo">
    <p>{!echo.text} : {!echo.state}</p>
  </aura:iteration>
</aura:component>
```

Here is the source for the client-side controller.

```
/** Client-Side Controller */
({
  doForeground: function(cmp, event, helper) {
    helper.echo(cmp, 'Foreground #1');
    helper.echo(cmp, 'Foreground #2');
  },
  doBackground: function(cmp, event, helper) {
    helper.echo(cmp, 'Background #1', function(action) {
      action.setBackground();
    });
    helper.echo(cmp, 'Background #2', function(action) {
      action.setBackground();
    });
    helper.echo(cmp, 'Background #3', function(action) {
      action.setBackground();
    });
    helper.echo(cmp, 'Background #4', function(action) {
      action.setBackground();
    });
  }
})
,
```

The client-side controller references a helper. Here is the source for the helper.

```
/** Helper */
({
  echo: function(cmp, message, callback) {
    var action = cmp.get("c.echo");
    action.setParams({
      message: message
    });

    action.setCallback(this, function(response) {
      var state = response.getState();
      var text = response.getReturnValue();
      var echoes = cmp.get('v.echoes');
      echoes.push({
        text: text,
        state: state
      });
      cmp.set('v.echoes', echoes)
    });

    if ($A.util.isFunction(callback)) {
      callback(action);
    }

    $A.enqueueAction(action);
  }
})
})
```


The `echo` function in the helper calls the `echo` method in the server-side controller. Here is the source for the server-side controller.

```
/** Server-Side Controller */
package org.auraframework.docs;
import org.auraframework.system.Annotations.*;

@Controller
public class echoController {
    @AuraEnabled
    public static String echo(
        @Key("message") String message
    ) throws InterruptedException {
        Thread.sleep(1000);
        return message;
    }
}
```

The `echo` method sleeps for one second and echoes back the message that was passed in.

Note that `doForeground` in the client-side controller calls the `echo` function twice, while `doBackground` calls `echo` four times. Since each background action is sent in its own request, `doForeground` will take twice as long to return as one of the background actions in `doBackground`.

When the `doForeground` and `doBackground` controller actions are triggered in that order, the echoes are printed like this.

- Background #3: SUCCESS
- Background #2: SUCCESS
- Background #1: SUCCESS
- Foreground #1: SUCCESS
- Foreground #2: SUCCESS
- Background #4: SUCCESS

Foreground actions run in the order they are queued. Background actions run three at a time, so the first three actions must return before the fourth one is executed.

When the `doBackground` and `doForeground` controller actions are triggered in that order, the echoes are printed like this.

- Background #1: SUCCESS
- Background #3: SUCCESS
- Background #2: SUCCESS
- Background #4: SUCCESS
- Foreground #1: SUCCESS
- Foreground #2: SUCCESS

Since all enqueued actions are run at the end of the event loop, the trigger order of the foreground and background actions shouldn't matter. In this second example, the first three background actions are guaranteed to complete before the foreground actions. The fourth background action completes in a race condition with the foreground actions. There is no guarantee which action will return first.



Note: When `isBackground` is `true` for an action, the action can't be set back to a foreground action. In other words, calling `setBackground` to set it to `false` will have no effect.

To mark a server-side action as a background action in Java, use the `@BackgroundAction` annotation at the method level on the controller.

SEE ALSO:

[Queueing of Server-Side Actions](#)

[Calling a Server-Side Action](#)

[Creating a Java Server-Side Controller](#)

Caboose Actions

Use a caboose server action to send data to the server that is not time-sensitive, such as logging, performance statistics, or click tracking data.

A caboose action will wait until another non-caboose foreground action is sent and will piggyback on that `XMLHttpRequest` (XHR). This can improve performance by eliminating the overhead of additional round trips to the server.

When you start generating the data on the client that you want to eventually send back to the server, mark a foreground action as a caboose action with `action.setCaboose()`, enqueue the action, and set a callback with `setAllAboardCallback()`. That callback is called just before the action is sent to the server and should be written to take the data from the queue, put it in the action with one or more calls to `setParam()`, and then clear the queue. The server-side action should then process the data that was sent as parameters.



Note: If there is a caboose action in the queue when the user closes the app, that caboose action will not be sent.

SEE ALSO:

[Queueing of Server-Side Actions](#)

[Calling a Server-Side Action](#)

Storable Actions

A server-side controller action can have its response stored in the client-side cache by the framework. This can be useful if you want your app to be functional for devices that temporarily don't have a network connection.



Warning: A storable action might result in no call to the server. An action that updates or deletes data should **never** be marked storable.

Successful actions, for which `getState()` in the JavaScript callback returns `SUCCESS`, are stored.

If a storable action is aborted after it's been sent but not yet returned from the server, its return value is still added to storage but the action callback is not called.

The action response of a storable action is saved in an internal framework-provided storage named `actions`. This stored response is returned on subsequent calls to the same server-side action instead of the response from the server-side controller, as long as the stored response hasn't expired.

If the stored response has reached its expiration time, a new response is retrieved from the server-side controller and is stored in the `actions` storage for subsequent calls.

Marking Storable Actions

To mark a server-side action as storable, call `setStorable()` on the action in JavaScript code, as follows.

```
a.setStorable();
```

 **Note:** Storable actions are always implicitly marked as abortable too.

The `setStorable` function takes an optional parameter, which is a configuration map of key/value pairs representing the storage options and values to set. You can only set the following properties:

ignoreExisting

Set to `true` to refresh the stored item with a newly retrieved value, regardless of whether the item has expired or not. The default value is `false`.

refresh

Overrides the item's default autorefresh interval. Set the value in seconds. See [Refreshing an Action Response for Every Request](#) on page 161.

errorHandler

Handles errors thrown during storage. See [Error Handling](#) on page 162.

executeCallbackIfUpdated

Set to `false` to suppress the second invocation of the action callback caused when an action is refreshed and its response changes. The default value is `true`.

To set the storage options for the action response, pass this configuration map into `setStorable`.

Refreshing an Action Response for Every Request

If a storable action returns dynamic content from the server, set the refresh interval to `0` to ensure that the data is refreshed from the server. If an action response is already cached, the cached response is displayed while the server roundtrip is happening.

To refresh the action response for each request, set:

```
a.setStorable({
  "refresh": 0
});
```

Examples

This example marks an action as storable, forces a refresh next time the action is called, and overrides the autorefresh interval to 10 seconds.

```
a.setStorable({
  "ignoreExisting": true,
  "refresh": 10
});
```

This next example shows how to use `setStorable()` to store the server-side action response in a client-side cache. The markup includes a button that triggers the `runActionAtServerAndStore` client-side controller action. This client-side action calls a `fetchDataRecord` server-side action. Next, the action is marked as storable and is run. The server-side action return value is obtained in the callback.

This is the component markup that initializes the actions storage and contains a button.

```
<aura:component render="client" extensible="true"
  controller="java://org.auraframework.impl.java.controller.AuraStorageTestController"
  implements="auraStorage:refreshObserver">

  <auraStorage:init debugLoggingEnabled="true"
    name="actions"
    secure="true"
    persistent="false"
    clearStorageOnInit="true"
    defaultExpiration="50"
    defaultAutoRefreshInterval="60" />

  <ui:button label="Run action at Server and mark as storable"
    press="{!c.runActionAtServerAndStore}"
    aura:id="ForceActionAtServer"/>

</aura:component>
```

This is the action in the component's JavaScript client-side controller.

```
runActionAtServerAndStore:function(cmp, evt, helper){
  // Get server-side action
  var action = cmp.get("c.fetchDataRecord");

  action.setCallback(cmp, function(response){
    var returnValue = response.getReturnValue();
  });

  // Set server-side action as storable
  action.setStorable();

  // Run server-side action
  $A.enqueueAction(action);
},
```

You can also check whether an action response originates from storage by calling `isFromStorage` on the action object in the callback function of the JavaScript controller.

Error Handling

Specify a handler when an error occurs during configuration of a storable action. This example shows component markup that initializes the actions storage with a maximum size of 10 KB.

```
<aura:application controller="java://org.auraframework.JavaTestController">
  <auraStorage:init name="actions" maxSize="10"/>
</aura:application>
```

This is a client-side test that ensures the error handler is invoked when the error is thrown during storage. In this example, the array `tooLarge` results in a value larger than the `maxSize` value of 10 Kb. This condition triggers an error message in the `getItem()` method of the memory storage adapter. `$A.test.addWaitForWithFailureMessage` compares the expected error message

with the actual, returning a callback when the comparison returns true. The callback function in this example checks that the action should not be found in storage, since an error is thrown during storage.

```
test : function(component) {
    var errorHandled = null;
    var action = component.get("c.getString");
    var tooLarge = new Array(15000).join("!");
    action.setParams({ param: tooLarge });

    action.setStorable({
        errorHandler: function(error) {
            errorHandled = error;
        }
    });
    $A.run(function() {
        $A.enqueueAction(action);
    });
    $A.test.addWaitForWithFailureMessage(
        "MemoryStorageAdapter.setItem() cannot store an item over the maxSize",
        function() { return errorHandled; },
        "expecting error message from memory adapter",
        function() {
            $A.clientService.isActionInStorage(this._actionDescriptor, action.getParams(),
                function(isInStorage) {
                    $A.test.assertFalse(isInStorage,
                        "Action with error should not be found in storage.");
                }
            );
        }
    );
};
```

SEE ALSO:

[Calling a Server-Side Action](#)

[Caching with Storage Service](#)

[Creating Server-Side Logic with Controllers](#)

[Abortable Actions](#)

Server-Side Rendering to the DOM

The Aura rendering service takes in-memory component state and updates the component in the Document Object Model (DOM).

The DOM is the language-independent model for representing and interacting with objects in HTML and XML documents. Aura automatically renders your components so you don't have to know anything more about rendering unless you need to customize the default rendering behavior for a component.



Note: The preferred way to customize component rendering is to use a client-side renderer. You can also use a server-side renderer but it's not recommended as they don't degrade gracefully if an error, such as a network connection outage, occurs. The framework uses a server-side renderer to render an app's template and that is the primary use case for rendering on the server.

Creating a Java Server-Side Renderer

If you've exhausted the alternatives, including a client-side renderer, create a server-side renderer in Java by implementing the `org.auraframework.def.Renderer` interface. The interface contains one method:

```
public void render(BaseComponent<?,?> component, Appendable appendable)
    throws IOException, QuickFixException;
```

The `component` argument is the instance to render. The `appendable` argument is the output buffer.

The class that implements the interface must have a no-argument constructor. The class is instantiated as a singleton, so no state should be stored in it.

Wiring Up a Server-Side Renderer

To wire up a server-side renderer for a component, add a `renderer` system attribute in `<aura:component>`. For example:

```
<aura:component
  renderer="java://org.auraframework.demo.notes.renderers.ReallyNeedAServerSideRenderer">
  ...
</aura:component>
```

The framework behavior is undefined if you add a server-side renderer that also includes a client-side renderer. We recommend that you use one or the other.

SEE ALSO:

[Client-Side Rendering to the DOM](#)

[Creating App Templates](#)

Server-Side Runtime Binding of Components

A provider enables you to use an abstract component or an interface in markup. The framework uses the provider to determine the concrete component to use at runtime.

Server-side providers are more common, but if you don't need to access the server when you're creating a component, you can use a client-side provider instead.


Set the `provider` system attribute in the `<aura:component>` tag of an abstract component or interface to point to the server-side provider Java class.

The syntax of the `provider` system attribute is `provider="java://package.class"` where `package.class` is the fully qualified name for the class.

A Java provider must:

- Include the `@Provider` annotation above the class definition
- Implement either the `ComponentDescriptorProvider` or `ComponentConfigProvider` interface

At runtime, a provider has access to a shell of the abstract component or interface, including any attribute values that have been set. The model isn't constructed yet so you can't access it. The `provide()` method can examine the attribute values that are set on the component, and return a descriptor of the non-abstract component type that should be used.

 **Note:** A provider should only return concrete components that are sub-components of a single base component or implement an interface. Aura doesn't currently enforce this restriction, but will in a future release.

ComponentDescriptorProvider

Use the `ComponentDescriptorProvider` interface to return a `DefDescriptor` describing the concrete component to use when you don't need to set attributes for the component. For example:

```
@Provider
public class SampleDescProvider implements ComponentDescriptorProvider {

    public DefDescriptor<ComponentDef> provide() {
        DefDescriptor defDesc = null;

        // logic to determine DefDescriptor to set and return.

        return defDesc;
    }
}
```

ComponentConfigProvider

Use the `ComponentConfigProvider` interface to return a `ComponentConfig`, which describes the concrete component to use in a `DefDescriptor` and enables you to set attributes for the component. For example:

```
@Provider
public class SampleConfigProvider implements ComponentConfigProvider {

    public ComponentConfig<ComponentDef> provide() {
        ComponentConfig cmpConfig = null;

        // logic to determine DefDescriptor
        // and attributes to set.

        return cmpConfig;
    }
}
```

Declaring Provider Dependencies

The Aura framework automatically tracks dependencies between definitions, such as components. However, if a component uses a provider that instantiates components that are not directly referenced elsewhere, use `<aura:dependency>` in the component to explicitly tell the framework about the dependency, which wouldn't otherwise be discovered by Aura.

SEE ALSO:

[Client-Side Runtime Binding of Components](#)

[Abstract Components](#)

[Interfaces](#)

[Getting a Java Reference to a Definition](#)

[aura:dependency](#)

[Mocking Java Providers](#)

Serializing Exceptions

You can serialize server-side exceptions and attach an event to be passed back to the client in such a way that an event is automatically fired on the client side and handled by the client's error-handling event handler.

To do this, on the server, instantiate a `GenericEventException` that contains an event and parameters and then throw it. The exception gets serialized and when the action goes back to the client, the exception is sent along with the action as an error on the action. The status of the action will be set as "Error". The specified event in `GenericEventException` will be fired and its handlers invoked. If a callback is provided specifically for the error state, then that callback is invoked. Otherwise, the default callback is invoked.

```
@AuraEnabled
public static void throwsGEE(@Key("event") String event, @Key("paramName") String paramName,
    @Key("paramValue") String paramValue) throws Throwable {
    GenericEventException gee = new GenericEventException(event);
    if (paramName != null) {
        gee.addParam(paramName, paramValue);
    }
    throw gee;
}
```

On the client, the client-side framework automatically handles deserializing the event and firing it. For a component event, only handlers associated with this component are invoked, else the firing of the event has no effect. For an application event, its global and all event handlers are invoked.

A `GenericEventException` is a server-side Java exception that extends the generic exception, `ClientSideEventException`. Optionally, you can extend `ClientSideEventException` yourself but it is easier to use the provided `GenericEventException`. Other classes that extend `ClientSideEventException` are the `ClientOutOfSyncException` class, the `SystemErrorException` class, the `InvalidSessionException` class, and the `NoAccessException` class. These classes are for internal use only.

For a working example of a server-side controller that throws a `GenericEventException`, refer to the `test:testActionEvent` component.

SEE ALSO:

[Creating Server-Side Logic with Controllers](#)

CHAPTER 15 Java Cookbook

In this chapter ...

- Dynamically Creating Components in Java
- Setting a Component ID
- Getting a Java Reference to a Definition

This section includes code snippets and samples that can be used in JavaScript classes.

Dynamically Creating Components in Java

You can create a component dynamically in your Java code.

This example demonstrates how to use Java to get an instance of a component. An instance represents the data for a component. Use the `InstanceService` class to create a new component instance.

```
// listAttributes is a map of attributes for the component
Map<String, Object> listAttributes = new HashMap();
listAttributes.put("sort", "asc");
Component cmpInstance =
    Aura.getInstanceService().getInstance("auranote:noteList",
        ComponentDef.class, listAttributes);
```

The first parameter to the `getInstance` method is `auranote:noteList`, which is the qualified name for a `noteList` component in the `auranote` namespace.

The second parameter is `ComponentDef.class`, which indicates the class for the instance.

The third parameter is `listAttributes`, which contains a map of attributes for the component instance. In this case, we only have one `sort` attribute, but you can add more attributes to the map, if needed.

The `InstanceService` class also has other overloaded `getInstance` methods that take either a `Definition` or a `DefDescriptor` as their first parameter instead of a qualified name.

SEE ALSO:

[Setting a Component ID](#)

[Component Request Glossary](#)

[Getting a Java Reference to a Definition](#)

Setting a Component ID

To create a component with a local ID and attributes in Java code, use `ComponentDefRefBuilder` to set the component definition reference.

`ComponentDefRefBuilder` is also known as `ComponentDefRef`. The `ComponentDefRef` creates the definition of the component instance and turns it into an instance of the component during runtime.

```
ComponentDefRefBuilder builder = Aura.getBuilderService().getComponentDefRefBuilder();

//Set the descriptor for your new component
builder.setDescriptor("namespace:newCmp");


//Set the local Id for your new component
builder.setLocalId("newId");

//Set attributes on the new component
builder.setAttribute("attr1", false);
builder.setAttribute("attr2", attrVal);

//Create a new instance of the component
Component aNewCmp = builder.build().newInstance(null).get(0);
```

You can also create an instance of a component using `Aura.getInstanceService().getInstance()`, but you should use the `ComponentDefRefBuilder` if you want to:

- Set an ID on the new component.
- Set a facet on a top-level component.
- Create multiple instances of the components with minimal updates to the definition.

 **Note:** The XML Parser in Aura reads in files, such as `.cmp`, `.intf`, and `.evt`, by using the `BuilderService` to construct definitions. The `BuilderService` doesn't know anything about XML. If you want to create reusable definitions that are the equivalent of what you could type into an XML file, but don't want to use XML as the storage format, use the `BuilderService`.

SEE ALSO:

[Component Facets](#)

[Dynamically Creating Components in Java](#)

[Component Request Glossary](#)

[Server-Side Processing for Component Requests](#)

Getting a Java Reference to a Definition

A definition in Aura describes metadata for an object, such as a component, event, controller, or model. Rather than passing a more heavyweight definition around in code, Aura usually passes around a reference, called a `DefDescriptor`, instead.

In the example of a model, a `DefDescriptor` is a nicely parsed description of `model="java://myPackage.MyClass"` with methods to retrieve the language, class name, and package name.

To create a `DefDescriptor` in Java code, use the `DefinitionService` class to create a new `DefDescriptor`.

```
DefDescriptor<ComponentDef> defDesc =  
    Aura.getDefinitionService().getDefDescriptor("ui:button", ComponentDef.class);
```

The first parameter to the `getDefDescriptor` method is `ui:button`, which is the qualified name for a button component in the `ui` namespace. The second parameter is `ComponentDef.class`, which indicates the class for the definition.

SEE ALSO:

[Component Request Glossary](#)

CHAPTER 16 URL-Centric Navigation

In this chapter ...

- [Using Custom Events in URL-Centric Navigation](#)
- [Accessing Tokenized Event Attributes](#)
- [Using Layouts for Metadata-Driven Navigation](#)

It's useful to understand how the framework handles page requests. The initial GET request for an app retrieves a template containing all the framework JavaScript and a skeletal HTML response. All subsequent changes to everything after the # in the URL trigger an XMLHttpRequest (XHR) request for the content. The client service makes the request, and returns the result to the browser.

The portion of the URL before the # value doesn't change after the initial app request. The app is long-lived with subsequent actions causing incremental changes to the DOM for the lifetime of the app.

Navigation Events

The framework uses its event model to manage content change in response to URL changes. The framework monitors the location of the current window for changes. If the # value in a URL changes, the framework fires an application event of type `aura:locationChange`. The `locationChange` event has a single attribute called `token`.

For example, if the URL changes from `/demo/test.app#` to `/demo/test.app#foo`, a `aura:locationChange` event is fired, and the `token` attribute on that event is set to `foo`.

SEE ALSO:

[Modes Reference](#)

[aura:application](#)

[Using Layouts for Metadata-Driven Navigation](#)

[Initial Application Request](#)

Using Custom Events in URL-Centric Navigation

If your application requires a more complex URL schema, with name-value pairs that you want to tokenize, you can extend `aura:locationChange` to add your own event type. For example, you could create the `demo/myLocationChange/myLocationChange.evt` event so that the framework automatically parses the `thing1` and `thing2` attributes in the URL.

```
<aura:event type="application" extends="aura:locationChange">
  <aura:attribute name="thing1" type="String"/>
  <aura:attribute name="thing2" type="Boolean"/>
</aura:event>
```

Update the `locationChangeEvent` attribute in your `<aura:application>` component to indicate to the framework that you want to parse the hash of the URL into the custom event.

```
<aura:application locationChangeEvent="demo:myLocationChange">
```

Now, when the URL changes to `/demo/test.app#foo?thing1=Howdy&thing2=true`, the framework fires an event of type `demo:myLocationChange` with token set to `foo`, `thing1` set to `Howdy` and `thing2` set to `true`.



Note: The attributes after the `#` value use the same format as a query string: `#foo?thing1=Howdy&thing2=true`.

However, a real request query string starts before the `#` value. A sample query string that sets the mode to `PROD` (production) is `/demo/test.app?aura.mode=PROD&queryStrParam2=val2#foo`.

Accessing Tokenized Event Attributes

To see how you'd access the tokenized attributes, imagine a scenario where a component uses a `getHomeComponents` server-side action to retrieve components. You can write the `getHomeComponents` action to accept arguments that match the attributes in your custom location change event. The arguments are automatically mapped from the location change event to the action call.

```
@AuraEnabled
public static Aura.Component[] getHomeComponents(String token, String thing1, Boolean
thing2) {...}
```

Using Layouts for Metadata-Driven Navigation

Layouts are a metadata-driven description of navigation in an application. You can describe in an XML file how you want the application to respond to changes to everything after the `#` (hash) in the URL. You can use the framework without layouts, but they offer a centralized location for managing URL-centric navigation.

Layouts Metadata File

Each app can have a layouts file that describes navigation in the app. The name of the layouts file is derived from the name of the app. If the app is `demo.app`, the layouts file is `demoLayouts.xml` and it's in the same directory as `demo.app`.

The layouts file contains a `<aura:layouts>` system tag that can contain one or more `<aura:layout>` system tags. Each `<aura:layout>` is a matching rule for everything after the `#` in the URL.

A `<aura:layout>` system tag contains one or more `<aura:layoutItem>` system tags. Each `<aura:layoutItem>` is a template that populates a container with markup or the results of an action.

A container is dynamically populated when a `<aura:layout>` tag is matched. The container must have a `aura:id` attribute that is findable in the app. If an app contains components with attributes of `aura:id="sidebar"` and `aura:id="content"`, you can refer to the `sidebar` and `content` containers in a `<aura:layoutItem>` tag in the layouts file.

For example, consider `demo.app` that contains components with attributes of `aura:id="sidebar"` and `aura:id="content"`.

```
<aura:set attribute="left">
  <div class="sidebar" aura:id="sidebar"></div>
</aura:set>
<div class="content" aura:id="content"></div>
```

You can refer to the `sidebar` and `content` containers in a `<aura:layoutItem>` system tag in the associated `demoLayouts.xml` file.

```
<aura:layout name="sample" match="^{3}$">
  <aura:layoutItem container="sidebar" action="{!c.getList}"/>
  <aura:layoutItem container="content"><p>You can put markup here though it normally
would be dynamic</p></aura:layoutItem>
</aura:layout>
```

Each `<aura:layout>` first compares everything after the `#` in the URL with the `name` attribute. If it doesn't match, it compares the `#` value in the URL with the optional `match` attribute, which is a regular expression. In this case, the `name` attribute would match `#sample` in the URL and would then fall back to matching any three characters based on the `^{3}$` regular expression.

You would normally have more than one `<aura:layout>` in a layouts file. In that case, the framework attempts to match against each `name` attribute first. If there is no match for any `<aura:layout>`, the framework attempts to match against each `match` attribute.

The first `<aura:layoutItem>` populates the `sidebar` container with the results of the `getList` action on the server-side controller. The controller is defined in the `<aura:application>` tag in the associated `.app` file. A controller action is useful in this scenario because returning a list may need security checks and other processing that can't be expressed statically in markup.



Note: You can only reference a server-side action in a `<aura:layoutItem>`. You can't reference a client-side action.

The next `<aura:layoutItem>` populates the `content` container with some markup. In this case, it's static markup, but it would usually be dynamic and can include any component.

The `<aura:layouts>` system tag supports the following optional attributes:

default

This is the layout to use when the app is initially loaded and there is no `#` value in the URL.

catchall

This is the layout to use when the `#` value doesn't match any `<aura:layout>`.

IN THIS SECTION:

[Using Custom Events in Metadata-Driven Navigation](#)

SEE ALSO:

[URL-Centric Navigation](#)

Using Custom Events in Metadata-Driven Navigation

We saw how to create a custom event to tokenize multiple name-value pairs in [URL-Centric Navigation](#) on page 170. If your app has a layouts file, the layout service automatically handles the location change events that are fired.

Let's look at how layouts work with the same `demo/myLocationChange/myLocationChange.evt` event.

```
<aura:event type="application" extends="aura:locationChange">
    <aura:attribute name="thing1" type="String"/>
    <aura:attribute name="thing2" type="Boolean"/>
</aura:event>
```

To see how you'd access the tokenized attributes, let's look at a `<aura:layoutItem>` that uses a server-side action to retrieve components.

```
<aura:layoutItem container="center" action="{!c.getHomeComponents}"/>
```

You can write the `getHomeComponents` action to accept arguments that match the attributes in your custom location change event. The arguments are automatically mapped from the location change event to the action call.

```
@AuraEnabled
public static Aura.Component[] getHomeComponents(String token, String thing1, Boolean
thing2) {...}
```

CHAPTER 17 Using Object-Oriented Development

In this chapter ...

- [What is Inherited?](#)
- [Inherited Component Attributes](#)
- [Abstract Components](#)
- [Interfaces](#)
- [Inheritance Rules](#)

The framework provides the basic constructs of inheritance and encapsulation from object-oriented programming and applies them to presentation layer development.

For example, components are encapsulated and their internals stay private. Consumers of the component can access the public shape (attributes and registered events) of the component, but can't access other implementation details in the component bundle. This strong separation gives component authors freedom to change the internal implementation details and insulates component consumers from those changes.

You can extend a component, app, interface or an event, or you can implement a component interface.

What is Inherited?

This topic lists what is inherited when you extend a definition, such as a component.

Component Attributes

A sub component that extends a super component inherits the attributes of the super component. Use `<aura:set>` in the markup of a sub component to set the value of an attribute inherited from a super component.

Events

A sub component that extends a super component can handle events fired by the super component. The sub component automatically inherits the event handlers from the super component.

The super and sub component can handle the same event in different ways by adding an `<aura:handler>` tag to the sub component. The framework doesn't guarantee the order of event handling.

When an event fires, handlers for the event are executed. Handlers for any event that extend the event are also executed.

Helpers

A sub component's helper inherits the methods from the helper of its super component. A sub component can override a super component's helper method by defining a method with the same name as an inherited method.

Controllers

A sub component that extends a super component can call actions in the super component's client-side controller. For example, if the super component has an action called `doSomething`, the sub component can directly call the action using the `{!c.doSomething}` syntax.



Note: We don't recommend using inheritance of client-side controllers as this feature may be deprecated in the future to preserve better component encapsulation. We recommend that you put common code in a helper instead.

Models Are Not Inherited

A component's model is **not** inherited by a component that extends a super component.

SEE ALSO:

[Component Attributes](#)

[Events](#)

[Sharing JavaScript Code in a Component Bundle](#)

[Handling Events with Client-Side Controllers](#)

[aura:set](#)

[Java Models](#)

Inherited Component Attributes

A sub component that extends a super component inherits the attributes of the super component.

Attribute values are identical at any level of extension. There is an exception to this rule for the `body` attribute, which we'll look at more closely soon.

Let's start with a simple example. `docsample:super` has a `description` attribute with a value of "Default description",

```
<!--docsample:super-->
<aura:component extensible="true">
    <aura:attribute name="description" type="String" default="Default description" />

    <p>super.cmp description: {!v.description}</p>

    {!v.body}
</aura:component>
```

Don't worry about the `{!v.body}` expression for now. We'll explain that when we talk about the `body` attribute.

`docsample:sub` extends `docsample:super` by setting `extends="docsample:super"` in its `<aura:component>` tag.

```
<!--docsample:sub-->
<aura:component extends="docsample:super">
    <p>sub.cmp description: {!v.description}</p>
</aura:component>
```

Note that `sub.cmp` has access to the inherited `description` attribute and it has the same value in `sub.cmp` and `super.cmp`.

Use `<aura:set>` in the markup of a sub component to set the value of an inherited attribute.

Inherited `body` Attribute

Every component inherits the `body` attribute from `<aura:component>`. The inheritance behavior of `body` is different than other attributes. It can have different values at each level of component extension to enable different output from each component in the inheritance chain. This will be clearer when we look at an example.

Any free markup that is not enclosed in another tag is assumed to be part of the `body`. It's equivalent to wrapping that free markup inside `<aura:set attribute="body">`.

The default renderer for a component iterates through its `body` attribute, renders everything, and passes the rendered data to its super component. The super component can output the data passed to it by including `{!v.body}` in its markup. If there is no super component, you've hit the root component and the data is inserted into `document.body`.

Let's look at a simple example to understand how the `body` attribute behaves at different levels of component extension. We have three components.

`docsample:superBody` is the super component. It inherently extends `<aura:component>`.

```
<!--docsample:superBody-->
<aura:component extensible="true">
    Parent body: {!v.body}
</aura:component>
```

At this point, `docsample:superBody` doesn't output anything for `{!v.body}` as it's just a placeholder for data that will be passed in by a component that extends `docsample:superBody`.

`docsample:subBody` extends `docsample:superBody` by setting `extends="docsample:superBody"` in its `<aura:component>` tag.

```
<!--docsample:subBody-->
<aura:component extends="docsample:superBody">
    Child body: {!v.body}
</aura:component>
```

`docsample:subBody` outputs:

```
Parent body: Child body:
```

In other words, `docsample:subBody` sets the value for `{!v.body}` in its super component, `docsample:superBody`. `docsample:containerBody` contains a reference to `docsample:subBody`.

```
<!--docsample:containerBody-->
<aura:component>
    <docsample:subBody>
        Body value
    </docsample:subBody>
</aura:component>
```

In `docsample:containerBody`, we set the `body` attribute of `docsample:subBody` to `Body value`. `docsample:containerBody` outputs:

```
Parent body: Child body: Body value
```

SEE ALSO:

[aura:set](#)

[Component Body](#)

[Component Markup](#)

Abstract Components

Object-oriented languages, such as Java, support the concept of an abstract class that provides a partial implementation for an object but leaves the remaining implementation to concrete sub-classes. An abstract class in Java can't be instantiated directly, but a non-abstract subclass can.

Similarly, Aura supports the concept of abstract components that have a partial implementation but leave the remaining implementation to concrete sub-components.

To use an abstract component, you must either extend it and fill out the remaining implementation, or add a provider. An abstract component can't be used directly in markup unless you define a provider.

The `<aura:component>` tag has a boolean `abstract` attribute. Set `abstract="true"` to make the component abstract.

SEE ALSO:

[Server-Side Runtime Binding of Components](#)

[Interfaces](#)

Interfaces

Object-oriented languages, such as Java, support the concept of an interface that defines a set of method signatures. A class that implements the interface must provide the method implementations. An interface in Java can't be instantiated directly, but a class that implements the interface can.

Similarly, Aura supports the concept of interfaces that define a component's shape by defining its attributes.

Since there are fewer restrictions on the content of abstract components, they are more common than interfaces. A component can implement multiple interfaces but can only extend one abstract component, so interfaces can be more useful for some design patterns.

An interface starts with the `<aura:interface>` tag. It can only contain `<aura:attribute>` tags that define the interface's attributes. You can't use markup, renderers, controllers, models or anything else in an interface.

To use an interface, you must implement it or add a provider. An interface can't be used directly in markup otherwise. Set the `implements` system attribute in the `<aura:component>` tag to the name of the interface that you are implementing. For example:

```
<aura:component implements="mynamespace:myinterface" >
```

A component can implement an interface and extend another component.

```
<aura:component extends="ns1:cmp1" implements="ns2:intf1" >
```

An interface can extend multiple interfaces using a comma-separated list.

```
<aura:interface extends="ns:intf1,ns:int2" >
```



Note: Use `<aura:set>` in a sub component to set the value of any attribute that is inherited from the super component. This works for components and abstract components, but it doesn't work for interfaces. To set the value of an attribute inherited from an interface, you must redefine the attribute in the sub component using `<aura:attribute>` and set the value in its default attribute.

SEE ALSO:

[Server-Side Runtime Binding of Components](#)

[Setting Attributes Inherited from an Interface](#)

[Abstract Components](#)

Marker Interfaces

You can use an interface as a marker interface that is implemented by a set of components that you want to easily identify for specific usage in your app.

In JavaScript, you can determine if a component implements an interface by using `myCmp.isInstanceOf("mynamespace:myinterface")`.

In Java, use the `isInstanceOf()` method in the `ComponentDef` or `ApplicationDef` interfaces.

Inheritance Rules

This table describes the inheritance rules for various elements.

Element	extends	implements	Default Base Element
component	one extensible component	multiple interfaces	<aura:component>
app	one extensible app	N/A	<aura:application>
interface	multiple interfaces using a comma-separated list (extends="ns:intf1,ns:int2")	N/A	N/A
component event	one component event	N/A	<aura:componentEvent>
application event	one application event	N/A	<aura:applicationEvent>

SEE ALSO:

[Interfaces](#)

[Events](#)

CHAPTER 18 Caching with Storage Service

In this chapter ...

- [Initializing Storage Service](#)
- [Using Storage Service](#)

The Storage Service provides a powerful, simple-to-use caching infrastructure. Client applications can benefit from caching data to reduce response times of pages by storing and accessing data locally rather than requesting data from the server. This enhances the user experience on the client. Caching is especially beneficial for high-performance, mostly connected applications operating over high latency connections, such as 3G networks.

The advantage of using the Storage Service instead of other caching infrastructures, such as Apple local storage for iOS devices, is that the Storage Service offers several types of storage through adapters. Storage can be persistent and secure. With persistent storage, cached data is preserved between user sessions in the browser. With secure storage, cached data is encrypted.

Storage Adapter Name	Persistent	Secure
SmartStore	true	true
WebSQL	true	false
MemoryAdapter	false	true

SmartStore

(Persistent and secure) The SmartStore caching service is provided by the Salesforce Mobile SDK and is available only if you have installed the Salesforce Mobile SDK. The Salesforce Mobile SDK enables developing mobile applications that integrate with Salesforce. You can use SmartStore with these mobile applications for caching data.

WebSQL

(Persistent but not secure) Provides access to a client-side SQL database.

MemoryAdapter

(Not persistent but secure) Provides access to the JavaScript main memory space for caching data. The stored cache persists only per browser page. Browsing to a new page resets the cache. Also, MemoryAdapter provides cache management capabilities. If the memory size limit has been reached, MemoryAdapter removes the least recently used data from the cache to shrink the cache size.

The Storage Service selects a storage adapter on your behalf that matches the persistent and secure options you specify when initializing the service. For example, if you request a persistent and secure storage service, the Storage Service will return the SmartStore storage.

There are two types of storage:

- Custom named storage: Storage that you control by adding and retrieving items to and from storage.
- Framework-provided actions storage: Storage that is available for client-side and server-side actions that enables caching action response values.

When you initialize storage, you can set certain options, such as the maximum cache size and the default expiration time. The storage name is required and must be specified.



Note: The storage name can be any name except for “actions”, which is reserved for the server action storage that the framework uses.

The expiration time for an item in storage specifies the duration after which an item should be replaced with a fresh copy. The refresh interval takes effect only if the item hasn't expired yet and applies to the actions storage only. In that case, if the refresh interval for an item has passed, the item gets refreshed after the same action is called. If stored items have reached their expiration times or have exceeded their refresh intervals, they're replaced only after a call is made to access them and if the client is online.

SEE ALSO:

[Creating Server-Side Logic with Controllers](#)

[Storable Actions](#)

[Initializing Storage Service](#)

Initializing Storage Service

To use storage, you must initialize it first and specify a name and, optionally, other properties. If you don't specify the optional properties, the Storage Service uses default values set by the `initStorage()` method of [AuraStorageService](#).

You can initialize storage for your component using markup in one of two ways: by using a template or by adding the markup in the component body.

This example shows how to use a template to initialize storage using component markup. The component references the template in the `template` attribute. The template defined in the second example contains `auraStorage:init` tags that specify storage initialization properties. This example initializes three different storages: the framework-provided actions storage, and two custom storages named `savings` and `checking`.

```
<aura:component render="client" template="auraStorageTest:namedStorageTemplate">
</aura:component>
```

```
<aura:component isTemplate="true" extends="aura:template">
  <aura:set attribute="auraPreInitBlock">
    <!-- Note that the maxSize attribute in <auraStorage:init> is in KB
    <auraStorage:init name="actions" persistent="false" secure="false" maxSize="9999"/>

    <auraStorage:init name="savings" persistent="false" secure="true" maxSize="6666"/>

    <auraStorage:init name="checking" maxSize="7777"/>
  </aura:set>
</aura:component>
```

Alternatively, you can add `auraStorage:init` tags directly in the body of your component definition. The following example shows component markup that initializes a storage named `savings`.

```
<aura:component render="client" extensible="true"
  controller="java://org.auraframework.impl.java.controller.AuraStorageTestController"
  implements="auraStorage:refreshObserver">

  <auraStorage:init debugLoggingEnabled="true"
    name="savings"
    secure="true"
    persistent="false"
    clearStorageOnInit="true"
    defaultExpiration="50"
    defaultAutoRefreshInterval="60" />

</aura:component>
```

Alternatively, you can initialize storage on-the-fly using the JavaScript API. This example shows how to initialize the Storage Service using `initStorage()` in a JavaScript client-side controller.


```
var storage = $A.storageService.initStorage("MyStorage", // name
                                           true,         // persistent
                                           true,         // secure
                                           524288,       // maxSize in bytes (512 *
1024)
                                           600,          // defaultExpiration
                                           600,          // defaultAutoRefreshInterval
```



```

true,          // debugLoggingEnabled
true);        // clearStorageOnInit

```

 **Warning:** The `maxSize` parameter in `$A.storageService.initStorage()` has a unit of bytes. This is different than the `maxSize` attribute in `<auraStorage:init>`, which has a unit of KB.

SEE ALSO:

[Storable Actions](#)


[Using Storage Service](#)

Using Storage Service

After you've initialized your custom storage, you can add and retrieve items from your storage. To do so, use the JavaScript `put` and `get` API of [AuraStorage](#).

Storage Service uses [ES6 Promises](#). For more information about promises, see www.html5rocks.com/en/tutorials/es6/promises/.

`AuraStorage` calls are asynchronous and return a `Promise` object that is resolved when the operation completes, or rejected if an error occurred.

 **Note:** Promises execute their resolve and reject functions asynchronously so the code is outside the Aura event loop and normal rerendering lifecycle. If the resolve or reject code makes any calls to Aura, such as setting a component attribute, use `$A.run()` to wrap the code. For more information, see [Modifying Components Outside the Framework Lifecycle](#) on page 129.

The framework-provided actions storage for server-side actions automatically adds and retrieves items from storage and doesn't require you to call `put` and `get` explicitly. See [Storable Actions](#) on page 160.

Using `get()` and `put()`

This example shows how to use a storage object to explicitly store items. For information on initializing a storage object, see [Initializing Storage Service](#) on page 182.

The call to `put` takes a key that is used to uniquely identify the stored item, and returns a `Promise` that resolves when the operation is complete.

```

var value1 = 67;
// returns a Promise object that is not used here
storage.put("score", value1);

storage.put("name", "joe smith")
  .then(function() { console.log("name is stored"); },
        function(err) { console.log("named failed to store: " + err) }
  );

```

The first function in `then()` is called when the `Promise` resolves. The second function is called when the `Promise` rejects.

You can retrieve stored items by using the `get` method. The `get` method takes as a parameter the key of the object you wish to retrieve. It returns a `Promise` that resolves to the retrieved value or `undefined` if the key is not found.

```

storage.get("score")
  .then(function(value) { console.log("score is " + value); })
  .then(function() { return storage.get("name"); })
  .then(function(value) { console.log("name is " + value); },


```

```
        function(err) { console.log("failed: " + err); }  
    );
```

Using Other **AuraStorage** Methods

You can obtain any initialized named storage by calling `getStorage()` and by passing it the storage name. For example:

```
var storage = $A.storageService.getStorage("MyStorage");
```

 **Note:** The `getName()` method returns the type of storage selected, not the name of the storage.

There are other methods available in the JavaScript API. For example, you can get the current and max size:

```
var storage = $A.storageService.getStorage("MyStorage");  
storage.getSize().then(  
    function(size) { return size; },  
    function(err) { return "unknown"; }  
)  
.then(function(size) {  
    var max = storage.getMaxSize();  
    console.log("size is " + size + " KB of max " + max + " KB");  
});
```

To clear the storage:

```
var storage = $A.storageService.getStorage("MyStorage");  
storage.clear().then(  
    function() { console.log("storage has cleared"); },  
    function(err) { console.log("storage failed to clear: " + err); }  
);
```

SEE ALSO:

[Storable Actions](#)

[Initializing Storage Service](#)

CHAPTER 19 Using the AppCache

In this chapter ...

- [Enabling the AppCache](#)
- [Loading Resources with AppCache](#)
- [Specifying Additional Resources for Caching](#)

Application cache (AppCache) speeds up app response time and reduces server load by only downloading resources that have changed. It improves page loads affected by limited browser cache persistence on some devices.

AppCache can be useful if you're developing apps for mobile devices, which sometimes have very limited browser cache. Apps built for desktop clients may not benefit from the AppCache. The framework supports AppCache for WebKit-based browsers, such as Chrome and Safari.



Note: See [an introduction to AppCache](#) for more information.

SEE ALSO:

[Component Request Overview](#)

[aura:application](#)

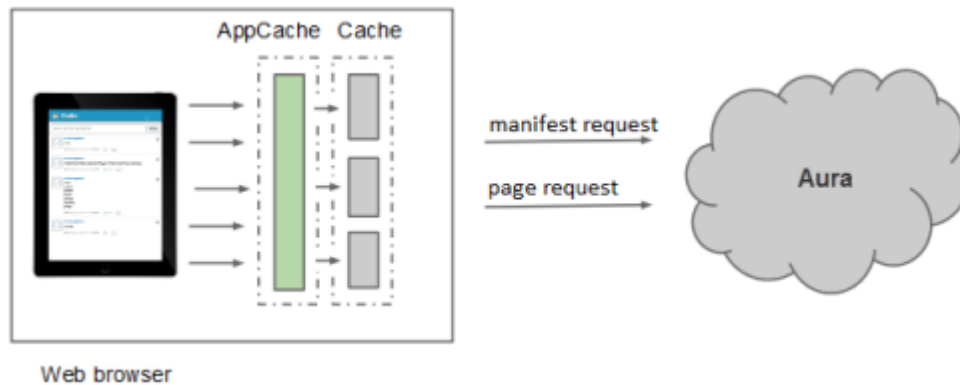
Enabling the AppCache

The framework disables the use of AppCache by default.

To enable AppCache in your application, set the `useAppcache="true"` system attribute in the `aura:application` tag. We recommend disabling AppCache during initial development while your app's resources are still changing. Enable AppCache when you are finished developing the app and before you start using it in production to see whether AppCache improves the app's response time.

Loading Resources with AppCache

A cache manifest file is a simple text file that defines the Web resources to be cached offline in the AppCache.



The cache manifest is auto-generated for you at runtime if you have enabled AppCache in your application. If there are any changes to the resources, the framework updates the timestamp to trigger a refetch of all resources. Fetching resources only when necessary reduces server trips for users.

When a browser initially requests an app, a link to the manifest file is included in the response.

```
<html manifest="/path/to/app.manifest">
```

The manifest path includes the mode and app name of the app that's currently running. This manifest file lists framework resources as well as your JavaScript code and CSS, which are cached after they're downloaded for the first time. A hash in the URL ensures that you always have the latest resources.



Note: You'll see different resources depending on which mode you're running in. For example, `aura_prod.js` is available in `PROD` mode and `aura_proddebug.js` is available in `PRODDEBUG` mode.

Specifying Additional Resources for Caching

When AppCache is enabled, you can specify web resources to be cached in addition to the resources that framework caches by default. These additional resources can be any resources that can be referenced and cached, such as JavaScript (`.js`) files, CSS stylesheet (`.css`) files, and images.

To specify additional resources for the AppCache, add the `additionalAppCacheURLs` system attribute to the `aura:application` tag in your `.app` file. The `useAppcache="true"` attribute must be also set to enable caching. The `additionalAppCacheURLs` attribute value holds the URLs of the additional resources. The URLs can be local, such as `"/resources/format.css"`, or absolute, such as `"http://example.com/resources/format.css"`. When specifying more than one resource, separate the resources with commas.

This is an example of using the `additionalAppCacheURLs` attribute in the application tag. In this example, the URLs in the attribute value are obtained from a server controller action.

```
<aura:application useAppcache="true" render="client" access="global"
    controller="java://org.auraframework.impl.java.controller.TestController"
    additionalAppCacheURLs="{!c.getAppCacheUrls}">
</aura:application>
```

This is the implementation of the server controller action.

```
@AuraEnabled
public static List<String> getAppCacheUrls() throws Exception {
    List<String> urls = Lists.newArrayList();
    urls.add("/auraFW/resources/aura/auraIdeLogo.png");
    urls.add("/auraFW/resources/aura/resetCSS.css");
    return urls;
}
```

CHAPTER 20 Controlling Access

In this chapter ...

- [Application Access Control](#)
- [Interface Access Control](#)
- [Component Access Control](#)
- [Attribute Access Control](#)
- [Event Access Control](#)

The framework enables you to control access to your applications, interfaces, components, attributes, and events via the `access` attribute on these tags. This attribute indicates whether the file can be used outside of its own namespace.

Tag	Description
<code>aura:application</code>	Represents an application
<code>aura:interface</code>	Represents an interface
<code>aura:component</code>	Represents a component
<code>aura:attribute</code>	Represents an attribute in an application, interface, component, or event
<code>aura:event</code>	Represents an event

By default, the `access` attribute is set to `internal` for all tags.

Application Access Control

The `access` attribute on the `aura:application` tag indicates whether the app can be extended outside of the app's namespace. Possible values are listed below.

Modifier	Description
<code>global</code>	The app can be extended by another app in any namespace if <code>extensible="true"</code> is set on the <code>aura:application</code> tag.
<code>public</code>	The app can be extended by another app within the same namespace only.
<code>internal</code>	The app can be extended by another app in another system namespace. A system namespace is a privileged namespace that has access to all components. This is the default access level. If set to <code>internal</code> , the app isn't directly accessible via a URL in <code>PROD</code> mode.

Interface Access Control

The `access` attribute on the `aura:interface` tag indicates whether the interface can be extended or used outside of the interface's namespace.

Possible values are listed below.

Modifier	Description
<code>global</code>	The interface can be extended by another interface or used by a component in any namespace.
<code>public</code>	The interface can be extended by another interface or used by a component within the same namespace only.
<code>internal</code>	The interface can be extended by another interface or used by a component in another system namespace. A system namespace is a privileged namespace that has access to all components. This is the default access level.

An interface can extend another interface but a component can't extend an interface. A component can implement an interface using the `implements` attribute on the `aura:component` tag.

Component Access Control

The `access` attribute on the `aura:component` tag indicates whether the component can be extended or used outside of the component's namespace.

Possible values are listed below.

Modifier	Description
<code>global</code>	The component can be used by another component or application in any namespace. It can also be extended in any namespace if <code>extensible="true"</code> is set on the <code>aura:component</code> tag.

Modifier	Description
<code>public</code>	The component can be extended or used by another component, or used by an application within the same namespace only.
<code>internal</code>	The component can be extended or used by another component in another system namespace. A system namespace is a privileged namespace that has access to all components. This is the default access level. If set to <code>internal</code> , the component isn't directly accessible via a URL in <code>PROD</code> mode.

Attribute Access Control

The `access` attribute on the `aura:attribute` tag indicates whether the attribute can be used outside of the attribute's namespace. Possible values are listed below.

Access	Description
<code>global</code>	The attribute can be used in any namespace.
<code>public</code>	The attribute can be used within the same namespace only.
<code>private</code>	The attribute can be used only within the container app, interface, component, or event, and can't be referenced externally.
<code>internal</code>	The attribute can be used in another system namespace. A system namespace is a privileged namespace that has access to all components. This is the default access level.

Event Access Control

The `access` attribute on the `aura:event` tag indicates whether the event can be used or extended outside of the event's namespace.

Possible values are listed below.

Modifier	Description
<code>global</code>	The event can be used or extended in any namespace.
<code>public</code>	The event can be used or extended within the same namespace only.
<code>internal</code>	The event can be used in another system namespace. A system namespace is a privileged namespace that has access to all components. This is the default access level.

TESTING AND DEBUGGING

CHAPTER 21 Testing Components

In this chapter ...

- [JavaScript Test Suite Setup](#)
- [Assertions](#)
- [Debugging Components](#)
- [Utility Functions](#)
- [Sample Test Cases](#)
- [Mocking Java Classes](#)

Aura's loosely coupled components facilitate maintainability and enable efficient testing. Components are isolated from their application context for easier testing. Aura supports JavaScript testing for components and applications in production mode.

Add component tests to a JavaScript file in the component bundle. For example, a component `myData.cmp` in the `myApp` namespace is saved in the folder `myData`, which can contain a test file `myDataTest.js`.

To reuse code among test cases, use the `setUp` and `tearDown` functions, which can be useful for quickly setting up or removing objects. They are called before and after a test method is run. During test execution, additional suite methods can be accessed with `this.sharedMethod()`.



Note: You can view Aura's test methods in the [JavaScript API reference](#). Assertions and utility functions are also available for unit testing.

Run JavaScript tests in a Web browser by appending `?aura.mode=JSTEST` to your production component. For example, if you have a component `myData.cmp` in the `myApp` namespace, you can run test cases on `http://<your server>/myApp/myData.cmp?aura.mode=JSTEST`.

SEE ALSO:

[Component Bundles](#)
[Modes Reference](#)
[Querying State and Statistics](#)
[Assertions](#)
[Utility Functions](#)

JavaScript Test Suite Setup

A test file in a component bundle contains a suite of tests and properties, where each function represents a different test case.

You would typically define any shared properties before your test cases. Your test functions must follow the naming convention `test<testName>`. Prepending an underscore to the test function name like `_testGetResult` disables the test. A basic test suite looks like this.

```
({
  /** Properties shared across test cases**/
  attributes: {
    label: 'Submit',
    //Other attributes here
  },
  browsers: ['GOOGLECHROME', 'SAFARI', 'IPAD' ],
  setUp: function(component) {
    //Runs before each test case is executed but after component initialization
  },
  tearDown: function(component) {
    //Runs after each test case is executed
  },
  sharedMethod: function(arg1, arg2){
    //Utility functions that are invoked by calling this.sharedMethod(x, y)
  },

  /** Test Cases **/
  testCase1: {
    attributes: {
      //Attributes
    },
    browsers: [ '-FIREFOX' ],
    test: [ //A single function or a list of functions
      function(component) {
        //Test something
      },
      function(component) {
        //Test something
      }
    ]
  }
})
```

The `attributes` property specifies the attribute values that the component to be tested should be instantiated with. The `attributes` and `browsers` properties are optional.

Test Suite Properties

Test suite properties are values that the target component are instantiated with. The following lists supported properties for a test suite.

`attributes`

Applies to suite or test level. Setting attribute values outside of a test case applies the attribute values to the whole suite. If a test has both test level and suite level attributes, the test level attributes override those at the suite level.

Attribute values are passed as query parameters in the initial GET request. For example, this code initializes the `label` and `buttonTitle` attributes on a `ui:button` component.

```
attributes:{
  label: 'Submit',
  buttonTitle: 'click once'
}
```

`auraErrorsExpectedDuringInit`

Applies to test level only and accepts an array of Strings, where each String is an expected error message.

`auraErrorsExpectedDuringInit` specify errors from `$A.error` allowed during initialization that won't fail the test if received. For more information, see [Fail a Test Only When Expected](#) on page 195.

`auraWarningsExpectedDuringInit`

Applies to test level only and accepts an array of Strings, where each String is an expected warning message. When the `failOnWarning` flag is set, `auraWarningsExpectedDuringInit` specify warnings from `$A.warning` allowed during initialization that won't fail the test. For more information, see [Fail a Test Only When Expected](#) on page 195.

`browsers`

Applies to suite or test level. List browsers you want all test cases to test against. If this property is not specified, the tests execute in all supported browsers. Values prefixed with a hyphen exclude that browser from the test.

```
browsers: [ 'GOOGLECHROME', 'SAFARI', '-IPAD' ]
```

`doNotWrapInAuraRun`

Applies to suite or test level. Each function block within a test is referred to as a stage. By default, each stage of the test executes within its own `$A.run()` function to ensure the test code goes through the full rendering lifecycle and that all enqueued actions are run before continuing on to the next stage or completing the test. If this is not the desired behavior for your tests, set `doNotWrapInAuraRun` to true.

`failOnWarning`

Applies to suite or test level. If true, the test will fail on any warnings received during test execution not marked as expected via a call to `$A.test.expectWarnings()`, or any warnings received during test setup not declared under the `auraWarningsExpectedDuringInit` tag. For more information, see [Fail a Test Only When Expected](#) on page 195.

`setUp`

This property executes before each test case but after the component has been initialized.

`tearDown`

This property executes after each test case, regardless of the test status.

`sharedMethod`

Put additional utility functions here if your test needs to access them. This example is invoked with `this.sharedMethod(x,y)`.

```
sharedMethod: function(argument1, argument2){
  $A.test.assertNotNull(argument1, 'The first argument received was null');
}
```

`sharedString`

Share a string or function for multiple tests in the same test file.

```
sharedString: "My shared string",
sharedFunction: function() {},
testFunction: function() {
  this.sharedFunction(this.sharedString);
}
```

mocks

Mocking isolates your JavaScript tests from other resources, such as a Java model, provider, or server-side controller. Mocks that are defined as a suite property are shared among all test cases. For more information, see [Mocking Java Classes](#) on page 202.

Test Cases

Test cases are typically defined after the suite properties. They contain the `attributes`, `browsers`, and `mocks` properties. If these properties are specified in a test case, their values override those provided by suite properties. Additionally, a test case can contain a `test` property that's defined with a function or a list of functions. After the first function runs, the test waits for `$A.test.addWaitFor` to complete. This example method compares `expected` and the return value of the `lookForTextAfterClick`. When this comparison evaluates to true, the next function is run.

```
test: [
  function(component) {
    $A.test.assertTrue(true, 'This obviously should have passed.');
```

```
    $A.test.assertEquals('Opt Out', component.get("v.label"), "Wrong label.");
    $A.test.assertEquals('click once', component.get("v.buttonTitle"), "Wrong
tooltip.");
    debugger; // Break at this point in browsers that support the directive
    component.get('e.press').fire();
    $A.test.addWaitFor('expected', function() {
      var lookForTextAfterClick = component.get('v.updatedOnClick');
      return lookForTextAfterClick;
    });
  }, function(component) {
    $A.test.assertTrue(true, 'This also obviously should have passed after the click.');
```

```
  ]
}
```

To display an error message when the test function times out, use `$A.test.addWaitForWithFailureMessage`. This example runs a test that expects a result length of one by default, or two if the component is rendered on a phone.

```
test: function(cmp) {
  var expectedResultLength = 1;
  if ($A.get("$Browser.formFactor") == 'PHONE') {
    expectedResultLength = 2;
  }
  $A.test.addWaitForWithFailureMessage(
    expectedResultLength,
    function() {
      return result.length;
    },
    "Unexpected number of items in result");
}
```

IN THIS SECTION:

[Pass a Controller Action in Component Tests](#)

Invoke a controller action by wrapping it in a component.

[Fail a Test Only When Expected](#)

You can set a test to expect an error or warning, and fail a test only when you expect it to fail.

Pass a Controller Action in Component Tests

Invoke a controller action by wrapping it in a component.

You can't pass in a function or action as an attribute in component tests. Instead, use a component wrapper. For example, you want to pass an action in the following component to a test.

```
<!-- myNamespace:childCmp -->
<aura:component>
  <aura:attribute name="put" type="Aura.Action"/>
</aura:component>
```

Use a component wrapper that looks like this:

```
<aura:component>
  <aura:attribute name="items" type="integer" default="0"/>
  box called {!v.items} times
  <myNamespace:childCmp aura:id="putter" put="{!c.box}"/>
</aura:component>
```

The controller action retrieves the items attribute in the component and increments its value.

```
((
  box: function(cmp, event) {
    var items = cmp.get("v.items");
    cmp.set("v.items", items + 1);
  }
}))
```

The following test verifies the type of action that's passed in the component. `auraType` checks if the object is of a certain type, for example, whether it's of type `Component`, `Action`, or `Event`.

```
testAction: {
  test: function(component) {
    var box = component.get("c.box");
    $A.test.assertEquals("Action", box.auraType, "The type was incorrect.");
    $A.test.assertEquals("function", typeof box.run, "The run was not a function on the actions.");
  }
}
```

Fail a Test Only When Expected

You can set a test to expect an error or warning, and fail a test only when you expect it to fail.

All tests will fail on errors by default. There is no tag/setting to make a test not fail on errors. You must mark each individual error as expected. All tests will pass on warnings by default. If `failOnWarning: true` is set, then the test will fail for any warnings not marked as expected.

To enable your test to expect an error or warning during initialization, use `auraErrorsExpectedDuringInit` or `auraWarningsExpectedDuringInit`. The test fails only if any of the expected errors don't happen. To enable your test to expect an error or warning during the test itself, use `$A.test.expectAuraError` or `$A.test.expectAuraWarning`.

```
((
  failOnWarning: true,
```

```

/**
 * This case inherits the suite level failOnWarning so we need to declare
 * auraWarningsExpectedDuringInit to account
 * for warning in the controller's init function and have $A.test.expectAuraWarning
 * for any warnings in the test
 * block itself.
 */
testExpectedWarning: {
  auraWarningsExpectedDuringInit: ["Expected warning from auraWarningTestController
init"],
  test: function(cmp) {
    var warningMsg = "Expected warning from testExpectedWarning";
    var warningMsg2 = "Expected warning from testExpectedWarning2";
    $A.test.expectAuraWarning(warningMsg);
    $A.test.expectAuraWarning(warningMsg2);
    $A.warning(warningMsg);
    $A.warning(warningMsg2);
  }
},

/**
 * Override suite level failOnWarning and verify test does not fail on warnings.
 */
testNoFailOnWarning: {
  failOnWarning: false,
  test: function(cmp) {
    $A.warning("Expected warning from testNoFailOnWarning");
  }
}
})

```

Assertions

Assertions evaluate an object or expression for expected results and are the foundation of component testing. Each JavaScript test can contain one or more assertions. The test passes only when all the assertions are successful. Assertions should be prefixed with `$A.test`. If an assertion fails, an error message is typically returned with the `assertMessage` or `errorMessage` string.

Aura supports the following assertions.

Assertion	Description
<code>\$A.test.assert(condition, assertMessage)</code>	Asserts that the condition is <code>true</code> .
<code>\$A.test.assertAccessible(errorMessage)</code>	Asserts that the HTML output of the target component is accessibility compliant.
<code>\$A.test.assertDefined(arg1, assertMessage)</code>	Asserts that <code>arg1</code> is defined.
<code>\$A.test.assertEquals(arg1, arg2, assertMessage)</code>	Asserts that <code>arg1 === arg2</code> is <code>true</code> , where <code>arg1</code> is the expected value and <code>arg2</code> is the actual value.

Assertion	Description
<code>\$A.test.fail(assertMessage)</code>	Throws an error with the <code>assertMessage</code> string. Use this to test error handling. For example: <div> <pre>try { // do something where you expect an error \$A.test.fail("should have got an error"); } catch(e) { // assert expected error }</pre> </div>
<code>\$A.test.assertFalse(condition, assertMessage)</code>	Asserts that the condition is <code>false</code> .
<code>\$A.test.assertFalsy(condition, assertMessage)</code>	Asserts that the condition is <code>false</code> , <code>null</code> , or <code>undefined</code> .
<code>\$A.test.assertNotEquals(arg1, arg2, assertMessage)</code>	Asserts that <code>arg1 === arg2</code> is <code>false</code> , where <code>arg1</code> is the expected value and <code>arg2</code> is the actual value..
<code>\$A.test.assertNull(arg1, assertMessage)</code>	Asserts that <code>arg1</code> is <code>null</code> . If it's not <code>null</code> , throws an error with the <code>assertMessage</code> string.
<code>\$A.test.assertStartsWith(start, full, assertMessage)</code>	Asserts that the <code>full</code> string starts with the <code>start</code> string.
<code>\$A.test.assertNotNull(arg1, assertMessage)</code>	Asserts that <code>arg1</code> is not <code>null</code> .
<code>\$A.test.assertTrue(condition, assertMessage)</code>	Asserts that the condition is <code>true</code> . This is the same as <code>\$A.test.assert(condition, assertMessage)</code> .
<code>\$A.test.assertTruthy(condition, assertMessage)</code>	Asserts that the condition is <code>true</code> , <code>null</code> , or <code>defined</code> .
<code>\$A.test.assertUndefined(arg1, assertMessage)</code>	Asserts that the argument is <code>undefined</code> .
<code>\$A.test.assertUndefinedOrNull(arg1, assertMessage)</code>	Asserts that the argument is <code>undefined</code> or <code>null</code> .
<code>\$A.test.assertNotUndefinedOrNull(arg1, assertMessage)</code>	Asserts that the argument is not <code>undefined</code> or not <code>null</code> .

Include unique and specific error messages in your assert statements. For example, use `assertTrue(run, "Returns true if the action has run successfully.")` instead of a generic message. Making each assert message unique also helps in narrowing down which assert statement has failed.

 **Note:** For a full list of assertions, refer to the [JavaScript API reference](#) on page 234.

SEE ALSO:

[Supporting Accessibility](#)

Debugging Components

Use the `debugger;` statement to debug your JavaScript tests, with the debug console in your browser opened. Remove or comment out the `debugger;` statement after you finish debugging.

You can view your debug output by appending `?aura.mode=JSTESTDEBUG` to your production component, which has minimal formatting for readability. Otherwise, append `?aura.mode=JSTEST` for a minified debug output.

Another useful tool for debugging is [Google Chrome's Developer Tools](#).

- To open Developer Tools on Windows and Linux, press Control - Shift - I in your Chrome browser.
- To quickly find which line of code a test fails on, enable the **Pause on all exceptions** option before running the test.

To simulate a user interaction in a test case, fire the associated Aura event. For example, use `buttonComponent.get("e.press").fire()` to simulate a button click event. To fire this event in the browser console, use `$A.getRoot().find("buttonId").get("e.press").fire()`. `$A.getRoot()` returns a reference to the top level component. `buttonId` refers to the local ID of the button component.

SEE ALSO:

[Debugging](#)


[Events](#)


[Modes Reference](#)

Utility Functions

Utility functions provides additional support for Aura's unit testing and should be prefixed with `$A.test`.

Utility	Description
<code>\$A.test.addFunctionHandler(instance, originalFunction, newFunction, postProcess)</code>	Adds a new function handler and overrides the original function.
<code>\$A.test.addWaitFor(expected, testFunction, callback)</code>	Waits for <code>expected === testFunction()</code> .
<code>\$A.test.blockRequests()</code>	Blocks requests (actions) from being sent to the server.
<code>\$A.test.callServerAction(action, doImmediate)</code>	Runs a server action. The test waits for any actions to complete before running the next function. If <code>doImmediate</code> is set to true, the request is sent immediately. Otherwise, the action is queued after prior requests.
<code>\$A.test.clickOrTouch(element, canBubble, cancelable)</code>	Fires a touchstart and touchend event if an element supports touch events. Fires a click event on the element otherwise.

Utility	Description
<code>\$A.test.expectAuraError(msg)</code>	Tells the test that an error is expected from <code>\$A.error</code> containing <code>msg</code> during test execution. The test fails if an error is received that was not previously declared to be expected.
<code>\$A.test.expectAuraWarning(msg)</code>	Tells the test that a warning is expected from <code>\$A.warning</code> containing <code>msg</code> during test execution. The test fails when an unexpected warning is received, if the <code>failOnWarnings</code> flag is set for the test.
<code>\$A.test.getErrors()</code>	Returns errors as JSON encoded strings. If no errors are found, return an empty string.
<code>\$A.test.getOuterHtml(node)</code>	Returns the outer HTML of an element.
<code>\$A.test.getPrototype(instance)</code>	Returns the prototype of the instance or object.
<code>\$A.test.getAction(component, name, params, callback)</code>	Returns an instance of an action.
<code>\$A.test.getText(node)</code>	Returns text as a string.
<code>\$A.test.isComplete()</code>	Returns whether the test is finished running.
<code>\$A.test.overrideFunction(instance, originalFunction, newFunction)</code>	Overrides an existing function.
<code>\$A.test.print(value)</code>	<p>Returns the <code>value</code> cast to a string.</p> <p>Possible return values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <code>undefined</code> • <code>null</code> • <code>"value"</code>—the <code>value</code> cast to a string • <code>value.toString()</code>—for non-strings
<code>\$A.test.releaseRequests()</code>	Release requests (actions) to be sent to the server.
<code>\$A.test.runAfterIf(conditionFunction, callback, intervalInMs)</code>	<p>Evaluates <code>conditionFunction</code> every interval. When it returns a truthy value, execute the callback. <code>intervalInMs</code> is 500 milliseconds by default.</p> <p> Note: Most values in JavaScript are truthy, such as objects, arrays, non-zero numbers, and non-empty strings.</p>
<code>\$A.test.select()</code>	Returns a list of elements within the document that matches the given arguments.
<code>\$A.test.setTestTimeout(timeoutMsec)</code>	Sets the timeout in milliseconds from now.

 **Note:** For a full list of utility methods and arguments, refer to the [JavaScript API reference](#) on page 234.

SEE ALSO:

[Assertions](#)

Sample Test Cases

Testing Label Values

This component contains two link buttons that save or cancel an action.

```
<!-- Component markup -->
<ui:outputURL label="Cancel" value="#" class="secondary-button" linkClick="{!c.onCancel}"/>
<ui:outputURL label="Save" value="#" class="primary-button" linkClick="{!c.onSave}"/>
```

The following test case uses assert statements to check that labels on the link buttons are set correctly. If you're using the global value provider `$Label` to set the label value in the component, use `$A.get("$Label.myLabel")` to retrieve the label.

```
{
  browsers: ["-IE7", "-IE8"], //optional browser exclusion
  testButtons : {
    test : [
      function testCancelButton(cmp) {
        $A.test.assertEquals(1, $A.test.select('.secondary-button').length,
          'Cancel button is not being displayed.');


$A.test.assertEquals("Cancel",



$A.test.getText($A.test.select('.secondary-button')[0]),



'Cancel button label is not set correctly.');



},



function testSaveButton(cmp) {



$A.test.assertEquals(1, $A.test.select('.primary-button').length,



'Save button is not being displayed.');



$A.test.assertEquals("Save",



$A.test.getText($A.test.select('.primary-button')[0]),



'Save button label is not set correctly.');



}



]



}



})


```

Testing Attribute Values

This component contains an input text area component with an attribute that sets the maximum number of characters.

```
<aura:attribute name="maxLength" type="Integer" default="5000"
  description="Max number of chars that can be inserted"/>
<ui:inputTextArea aura:id="textarea" label="My input"/>
```

The following test case checks that the attribute `maxLength` is correctly set.

```
{ (
  testMaxLength: {
    attributes : { maxLength: 10 },
    test : function(cmp) {
      cmp.set("v.value", "1234567890");
      cmp.getDef().getHelper().onValueChange(cmp);
      $A.test.assertEquals(0, this.getErrorCount(cmp), "No errors found");

      cmp.set("v.value", "12345678901");
      cmp.getDef().getHelper().onValueChange(cmp);
      $A.test.assertEquals(1, this.getErrorCount(cmp), "Too many characters");
    }
  }
})
```

Testing HTML Elements

This component contains a `div` tag with a `class` attribute that is set on rendering.

```
<!-- Component Markup -->
<aura:attribute name="class" type="String" default="" description="Additional css classes"/>
<div aura:id="myCmp" class="{! 'myClass ' + v.class}">
  <!-- Other component markup -->
</div>
```

The following test case checks that the specified class is set on initial render and rerender.

```
{ {
  verifyMyCmp: function(cmp) {
    var ele = cmp.find("myCmp").getElement();
    $A.test.assertTrue($A.util.hasClass(ele, "myClass"), "Element is not rendered with myClass");

    // additional class
    if(cmp.get("v.class")) {
      $A.test.assertTrue($A.util.hasClass(ele, cmp.get("v.class")), "Additional class not added as expected");
    }
    else {
      $A.test.assertTrue($A.util.hasClass(ele, "testClass"), "Additional class added unexpectedly");
    }
  },
  testMyCmp: {
    attributes: {
      isVisible: true, //myCmp is rendered
      'class': "testClass",
    },
    test: function(cmp) {
      this.verifyMyCmp(cmp);
    }
  }
}
```

```
    }
  })
```

SEE ALSO:

[JavaScript Test Suite Setup](#)

Mocking Java Classes

Use mocking to isolate your JavaScript test from other resources, such as a Java model, provider, or server-side controller. This enables you to narrow the focus of the test and eliminate other modes of failure, such as network errors. You should test the external resources in separate tests.

Aura enables you to mock a Java model, provider, or server-side controller by using a `mocks` element in your test function. `mocks` is an array of objects representing the resource that you're mocking.

Let's look at the high-level structure of a test using a mocked object. `mocks` contains `type`, `stubs`, and `descriptor` elements.

```
testSampleSyntax : {
  mocks : [{
    type : "MODEL|PROVIDER|ACTION",
    // descriptor is optional
    descriptor : ...,
    stubs : [{
      // method is optional for a model or provider
      method : { ... },
      answers : [{
        // specify value or error but not both
        value : ...
        error : ...
      }]
    }]
  },
  test : function(cmp) {
    // test code goes here
  }
},
```

type

The type of mock object. Valid values are: `MODEL`, `PROVIDER`, and `ACTION`.

stubs

An array of objects representing the Java methods of the class being mocked. A stub object has `method` and `answers` properties.

method

The `method` property is optional, except for the `ACTION` type. It defaults to `provide` for a provider, and `newInstance` for a model.

A method has the following elements:

- `name` is the method name.
- `params` is an array of Strings representing the input parameter types, if there are parameters.
- `type` is the return type. The default value is `Object`.

For example, this method element mocks `String doSomeWork(Boolean immediate, MyCustomType toProcess)`.

```
method : {
  name : "doSomeWork",
  type : "java.lang.String",
  params : ["java.lang.Boolean", "my.package.MyCustomType"]
}
```

answers

The `answers` property is an array of answer objects returned by the stub when it is invoked.

An answer object has either a `value` or an `error` property. This indicates whether the mock returns the given value or throws a Java exception.

The format of the `value` object depends on the class being mocked. Provider values correspond to the `ComponentConfig` object returned by `provide()`, and can specify either `descriptor` or `attributes` or both.



Note: The framework doesn't support custom values, such as types that require a custom converter.

Multiple answers enable you to test sequencing or multiple invocations of an action. For example, if a test simulates clicking a button twice, this would call a server action twice, and you may want the actions to return different responses.

Alternatively, your component might load two or more input fields and you want the model to return different values for each field. If the mock is invoked more times than you have answers for, the last answer is repeated. For example, if the mock for an input field value returns the answers "anybody" and "there", but the component has four input fields, the mock returns "anybody", "there", "there", "there".

The `error` property is a `String` containing the fully qualified class name of the exception thrown. You can only use exceptions with no-argument constructors, or a constructor accepting a `String`.

descriptor

The `descriptor` element is optional and defaults to the descriptor for the resource being mocked. For example, this is the descriptor for a model class.

```
descriptor : "java://org.auraframework.docsample.SampleJavaModel",
```

To mock the type of a super or child component, such as a child `ui:input` component, you need to specify a `descriptor`.



Note: The descriptor for the `ACTION` type is the controller descriptor rather than the action descriptor. For example:

```
descriptor : "java://org.auraframework.docsample.SampleJavaController",
```

IN THIS SECTION:

[Mocking Java Models](#)

[Mocking Java Providers](#)

[Mocking Java Actions](#)

Mocking Java Models

This test mocks a Java model. The test function is a placeholder. You would add actual test code here.

```
testModelProperties : {
  mocks : [{
    type : "MODEL",
    stubs : [{
      answers : [{
        value : {
          secret : { value : "<not available>" },
          integer : { value : 1 },
          stringList : { value : [ "early", "on", "time", "late" ] }
        }
      ]
    }]
  }],
  test : function(cmp) {
    // test code goes here
  }
},
```

This test has a mock object that throws an exception.

```
testModelThrowsException : {
  mocks : [{
    type : "MODEL",
    stubs : [{
      answers : [{
        error : "org.auraframework.throwable.AuraRuntimeException"
      ]
    }]
  }],
  test : function(cmp) {
    // test code goes here
  }
},
```

SEE ALSO:

[Java Models](#)

[Mocking Java Providers](#)

[Mocking Java Actions](#)

[Mocking Java Classes](#)

Mocking Java Providers

This test mocks a Java provider. The test function is a placeholder. You would add actual test code here.

```
testProviderDescriptorAndAttributes : {
  mocks : [{
    type : "PROVIDER",
    stubs : [{
```

```

        answers : [{
            value : {
                descriptor : "aura:text",
                attributes : { value : "fresh" }
            }
        }]
    }
}],
test : function(cmp) {
    // test code goes here
}
},

```

The value element for a provider corresponds to the `ComponentConfig` object returned by `provide()`, and can specify either `descriptor` or `attributes` or both.

SEE ALSO:

[Server-Side Runtime Binding of Components](#)

[Mocking Java Models](#)

[Mocking Java Actions](#)

[Mocking Java Classes](#)

Mocking Java Actions

This test mocks an action in a Java server-side controller. The test function is a placeholder. You would add actual test code here.

```

testActionString : {
    mocks : [{
        type : "ACTION",
        stubs : [{
            method : { name : "getString" },
            answers : [{
                value : "what I expected"
            }]
        }]
    }],
    test : function(cmp) {
        // test code goes here
    }
},

```

This test has a mock object that throws an exception.

```

testModelThrowsException : {
    mocks : [{
        type : "ACTION",
        stubs : [{
            method : { name : "getString" },
            answers : [{
                error : "java.lang.IllegalStateException"
            }]
        }]
    }],
}

```

```
    }},  
    test : function(cmp) {  
        // test code goes here  
    }  
}
```

SEE ALSO:[Creating Server-Side Logic with Controllers](#)[Mocking Java Models](#)[Mocking Java Providers](#)

CHAPTER 22 Customizing Behavior with Modes

In this chapter ...

- [Modes Reference](#)
- [Controlling Available Modes](#)
- [Setting the Default Mode](#)
- [Setting the Mode for a Request](#)

Modes are used to customize Aura framework behavior. For example, the framework is optimized for performance in `PROD` (production) mode, and ease of debugging in `DEV` (development) mode.

Modes Reference

Aura supports different modes, which are useful depending on whether you are developing, testing, or running code in production. The list of modes in Aura is defined in the `AuraContext` Java interface.

Every request in Aura is associated with a context. After initial loading of an app, each subsequent request is an XHR POST that contains your Aura context configuration, which includes the mode to run in, and the name of the app.

We split the list of modes into two sections here to differentiate between runtime and test modes. This split is purely to cluster similar modes together in the documentation. All the runtime and core modes are defined in the `Mode` enum in `AuraContext`.

All modes are available by default in your app. Many of the modes use the Google Closure Compiler, which is a tool for optimizing JavaScript code.

Runtime Modes

Use these modes for running in development or production.

Mode	PROD	DEV	PRODDEBUG
Usage	Use for apps in production. The framework is optimized for performance rather than ease of debugging in this mode.	Use for apps in development. The framework is configured for ease of debugging in this mode.	Use temporarily to debug apps in production.
Debugging	Not recommended for debugging. Since <code>PROD</code> mode is intended for apps in production, test modes, such as <code>SELENIUM</code> , are preferable for running tests, especially concurrent tests.	Facilitates debugging. Pretty prints JSON responses from the server. Exposes private members in some framework JavaScript objects.	Facilitates debugging. JavaScript is non-minified and readable.
Access	Disables access to a <code>.cmp</code> resource in a URL. You can only access a <code>.app</code> resource.	Enables a <code>.cmp</code> resource to be addressed in a URL.	Similar to <code>PROD</code> mode
Google Closure Compiler	Uses the Google Closure Compiler to optimize the JavaScript code. The method names and code are heavily obfuscated.	Uses the Google Closure Compiler to lightly obfuscate the names of non-exported JavaScript methods. This is meant to avoid unintentional usage of non-exported methods.	Does not use Google Closure Compiler
Caching	Caches code. When a file change is detected, this mode performs a full closure compile on all units.	Caches code. When a file change is detected, this mode clears the cache and recompiles definitions.	Similar to <code>PROD</code> mode

Test Modes

Use these modes for running different flavors of tests. The various test modes mainly expose extra JavaScript calls that are not available in runtime modes.

In all test modes, caching of registries between tests is disabled. If you modify a cached definition in a test, the modified cached definition is not visible to subsequent tests.

Mode	Usage
JSTEST	<p>Use for running component tests. If your component or app has a <code><componentName>Test.js</code> file in its bundle, a browser page is displayed to run the tests. A tab is displayed for each test case in your test suite. Each tab contains an iframe that loads the component in <code>AUTOJSTEST</code> mode and runs the single test case.</p> <p>The test results are displayed below the iframe. For a successful test run, the tab turns green; for a failure, it turns red.</p>
JSTESTDEBUG	Use for debugging component tests. Similar to <code>JSTEST</code> mode but doesn't use the Google Closure Compiler.
AUTOJSTEST	<p>Used by <code>JSTEST</code> mode when running inside the iframe for a test case. It enables extra JavaScript needed to execute the test case.</p> <p>Use this mode by requesting the component or app containing the test in <code>JSTEST</code> mode.</p>
AUTOJSTESTDEBUG	<p>Used by <code>JSTESTDEBUG</code> mode when running inside the iframe for a test case. It enables extra JavaScript needed to execute the test case.</p> <p>Use this mode by requesting the component or app containing the test in <code>JSTESTDEBUG</code> mode.</p>
PTEST	<p>Use for running performance tests using the Jiffy Graph UI. Loads Jiffy performance test tools and enables the Jiffy Graph UI. Jiffy is an end-to-end real-world web page instrumentation and measurement suite.</p> <p>This mode doesn't use the Google Closure Compiler.</p>
CADENCE	<p>Use for running performance tests if you want to use Jiffy metrics and track the numbers server-side. Loads and runs Jiffy performance test tools and logs the results on the server. Cadence tests use Jiffy, but don't load the Jiffy Graph UI.</p>
SELENIUM	Use for tests with Selenium, a software testing framework for web apps. This mode uses the Google Closure Compiler.
SELENIUMDEBUG	Similar to <code>SELENIUM</code> mode but doesn't use the Google Closure Compiler.
UTEST	Used for running unit tests against the framework. It allows developers of the framework to enable some debug code only during testing.
FTEST	Similar to <code>UTEST</code> mode, but used for functional tests instead of unit tests. This mode may expose different debug code than <code>UTEST</code> mode.

Mode	Usage
STATS	Used for compiling statistics for use with the query language.

SEE ALSO:

[Component Bundles](#)

[Setting the Default Mode](#)

[Testing Components](#)

Controlling Available Modes

You can customize the set of available modes in your application by writing a Java class that implements the `getAvailableModes()` method in the `ConfigAdapter` interface. The default implementation in `ConfigAdapterImpl` makes all modes available.

So, if you want to use your own configuration to limit the modes in certain environments, such as a production environment, you could limit the modes to only allow `PROD` mode. This would ensure that `PROD` mode is used for all requests. The default mode is not used if it's not also included in the list of available modes.

SEE ALSO:

[Modes Reference](#)

[Setting the Default Mode](#)

[Setting the Mode for a Request](#)

Setting the Default Mode

The default mode is `DEV`. This is defined in the `ConfigAdapterImpl` Java class.

You can change the default mode to `PROD` by setting the `aura.production` Java system property to `true`. Do this by adding `-Daura.production=true` to the arguments when you are starting your server.

To set an alternate default mode, write a Java class that implements the `getDefaultMode()` method in the `ConfigAdapter` Java interface.

The default mode is not used if it's not also included in the list of available modes.

SEE ALSO:

[Controlling Available Modes](#)

[Setting the Mode for a Request](#)

[Modes Reference](#)

Setting the Mode for a Request

Each application has a default mode, but you can change the mode for each HTTP request by setting the `aura.mode` parameter in the query string. If the requested mode is in the list of available modes, the response for that mode is returned. Otherwise, the default mode is used.

For example, let's assume that `DEV` and `PROD` are in the set of the available modes. If the default mode is `DEV` and you want to see the response in `PROD` mode, use `aura.mode=PROD` in the query string of the request URL. For example:

```
http://<your server>/demo/test.app?aura.mode=PROD
```

SEE ALSO:

[Modes Reference](#)

[Setting the Default Mode](#)

[Controlling Available Modes](#)

[URL-Centric Navigation](#)

CHAPTER 23 Debugging

In this chapter ...

- [Log Messages](#)
- [Warning Messages](#)
- [Debugging with Network Traffic](#)
- [Aura Debug Tool](#)
- [Querying State and Statistics](#)

There are several tools and techniques that can help you to debug applications.

Log Messages

To help debug your client-side code, you can write output to the JavaScript console of a web browser.

Use the `$A.log(string, [error])` method to output a log message to the JavaScript console.

The first parameter is the string to log.

The optional second parameter is an error object that can include more detail.

Note:

- `$A` is the shorthand in JavaScript code for the `Aura` object.
- `$A.log()` doesn't output in `PROD` or `PRODDEBUG` modes.

For example, `$A.log("This is a log message")` outputs to the JavaScript console:

```
This is a log message
```

If you put `$A.log("The name of the action is: " + this.getDef().getName())` inside an action called `openNote` in a client-side controller, it outputs to the JavaScript console:

```
The name of the action is: openNote
```

The output is also sent to the Aura Debug Tool.

For instructions on using the JavaScript console, refer to the instructions for your web browser.

Logging in Production Modes

To log messages in `PROD` or `PRODDEBUG` modes, you can write a custom logging function. You must use

`$A.logger.subscribe(String level, function callback)` to subscribe to log messages at a certain severity level.

The first parameter is the severity level you're subscribing to. The valid values are:

- `ASSERT`
- `ERROR`
- `INFO`
- `WARNING`

The second parameter is the callback function that will be called when a message at the subscribed severity level is logged. Note that `$A.log()` logs a message at the `INFO` severity level.

Let's look at some sample JavaScript code in a client-side controller.

```
{
  sampleControllerAction: function(cmp) {
    // subscribe to severity levels
    $A.logger.subscribe("INFO", logCustom);
    // Following subscriptions not exercised here but shown for completeness
    // $A.logger.subscribe("WARNING", logCustom);
    // $A.logger.subscribe("ASSERT", logCustom);
    // $A.logger.subscribe("ERROR", logCustom);

    $A.log("log one arg");
    $A.log("log two args", {message: "drat and double drat"});
  }
}
```

```
function logCustom(level, message, error) {
    console.log(getTimestamp(), "logCustom: ", arguments);
}

function getTimestamp() {
    return new Date().toJSON();
}

}

})
```

`$A.logger.subscribe("INFO", logCustom)` subscribes so that messages logged at the `INFO` severity level will call the `logCustom()` function. In this case, `logCustom()` simply logs the message to the console with a timestamp.

The `$A.log()` calls log messages at the `INFO` severity level, which matches the subscription and invokes the `logCustom()` callback.

Warning Messages

To help debug your client-side code, you can use the `warning()` method to write output to the JavaScript console of your web browser.

Use the `$A.warning(string)` method to write a warning message to the JavaScript console. The parameter is the message to display. For example, `$A.warning("This is a warning message.");` will output "This is a warning message." to the JavaScript console. A stack trace will also be displayed in the JavaScript console. The output is also sent to the Aura Debug Tool.

For instructions on using the JavaScript console, refer to the instructions for your web browser.

Debugging with Network Traffic

Looking at JSON network traffic can help you identify performance hotspots and tune your app.



Note: This topic describes an internal wire protocol that is subject to change at any time.

The Google Chrome Developer Tools let you look at JSON messages on the wire as they travel between the client and the server. The JSON messages are structured in a way that is readable. They are not binary encoded. For example, you can see when a `componentDef` is coming across or you could look for data and metadata going across the wire when the metadata should actually be cached. If metadata is repeatedly being sent across the wire, this can have a severe impact on performance.

In this tutorial, we will use the Aura Note sample application to illustrate how JSON messages can be viewed.

1. Get the latest version of the sample application by typing `git clone https://github.com/forcedotcom/aura-note.git` at a command prompt.
2. Type `cd aura-note`
3. Type `mvn jetty:run -Pdev`
4. In Google Chrome, browse to `http://localhost:8080/auranote/notes.app`
5. Right click on the Aura Note web page and select **Inspect Element** to open the Chrome Developer Tools.
6. In the Chrome Developer Tools window, click the **Network** tab.
7. In the Note Title field in Aura Note, type `My Test Note`. In the text field, type `This is my note text` and click **Save**.

Understanding the Request

In the Chrome Developer Tools **Network** tab, two `XMLHttpRequest` (XHR) requests are displayed. For an explanation of what each column means, refer to the Chrome Developer Tools documentation.

Click the first request and then click the **Headers** tab. The **Headers** tab displays the request that is being sent to the server. In the **Form Data** section, you can see the message and `aura.context`:

```
Form Data
message:
{"actions":[{"id": "44.2",
"descriptor":
"java://org.auraframework.demo.notes.controllers.NoteEditController/ACTION$saveNote",
"params": {
"title": "My Test Note",
"body": "This is my note text",
"latitude": null,
"longitude": null
}
}]}
aura.context: {
"mode": "DEV",
"loaded": {"APPLICATION@markup://auranote:notes": "BUI3ODiAK-fwLFsL70ufNQ"},
"app": "auranote:notes",
"lastmod": "1376946254000",
"fwuid": "ZWE1dXJKa3FSSwtQSzZ6S2NtSWdzQQ"
}
aura.num:
2
```

aura.context

The `aura.context` is the JSON encoded information that we need to send up to the server every time we communicate with it. It tells us some basic information about the client.

- `mode`: Describes the runtime mode that the client is operating in.
- `loaded`: Tells the server about the application and the version of the client. For example, `"loaded": {"APPLICATION@markup://auranote:notes": "BUI3ODiAK-fwLFsL70ufNQ"}` means that the application is in the `auranote` namespace, the application is `notes` and the version unique hash is `"BUI3ODiAK-fwLFsL70ufNQ"`. The version is used for change detection so the client can be updated to a new version when necessary. Optionally, if any components are dynamically loaded, they will be displayed at the end of the list. In this example, there is nothing to display. Here is an example from an app that has a component called `tutorialsNav` that is loaded dynamically:

```
"loaded": {
  "APPLICATION@markup://auradocs:docs": "4df774xhioeHpDZrhT4cuQ",
  "COMPONENT@markup://auradocs:tutorialsNav": "Lt2UR0hShMLcZT0845WSaA"
}
```

- `fwuid`: The framework unique id is a hash that is used as a fingerprint to detect if the framework has changed.

aura.num

The `aura.num` displays the number of XHRs that the client has made to the server. This is so we can ensure that any component global IDs contain the `aura.num` as their suffix. The `aura.num` attribute gets reset to 0 when you refresh the browser because it is only valid for the life of the page. If you navigate away from an app, the JavaScript memory space gets cleared and the

`aura.context` and all related data is destroyed. The `aura.num` attribute guarantees that global IDs will always be unique, even when they are created on the server. This is useful because the framework lets you do incremental, partial-page updates.

message

The `message` contains one or more actions that describe what to do at the server.

- `id`: The id of the action. The postfix of the id is the `aura.num`. It will be unique across the lifetime of an `aura.context`. This id is useful when the response is returned because we can use it to look up the callback, if there is one, and complete the processing of the round trip.
- `descriptor`: The descriptor for the action. In the example, the descriptor is on the `NoteEditController` in Java and it is the `saveNote` action.
- `params`: The parameters that get sent to the server. In the example, you can see the title and the body of the note that we created.

If a problem is happening at this point or if performance is slow, add a breakpoint in `saveNote` in `NoteEditController` to investigate. It lets you know where you could put a breakpoint on the server side. It is not uncommon to see several actions in one message being sent in one trip to the server. Actions are run one after the other so one slow action could slow your whole app down. Looking at this type of response can help you figure out which one is causing the problems.

Understanding the Response

1. In the Chrome Developer Tools window, click the **Response** tab to see the raw response that is being sent back from the server.
2. Next, click the **Preview** tab. It displays a formatted view of the response.

The `context` section of the response will look something like this:

```
context: {mode:DEV, app:auranote:notes, requestedLocales:[en_US, en],...}
  app: "auranote:notes"
  fwuid: "ZWEldXJKa3FSSWtQSzZ6S2NtSWdzQQ"
  globalValueProviders: [{type:$Browser,...},...]
    0: {type:$Browser,...}
      type: "$Browser"
      values: {formFactor:DESKTOP, isWindowsPhone:false, isPhone:false,
isFIREFOX:false, isIPad:false,...}
    1: {type:$Locale, values:{language:en, country:US, variant:, langLocale:en_US,
dateFormat:MMM d, yyyy,...}}
      type: "$Locale"
      values: {language:en, country:US, variant:, langLocale:en_US, dateFormat:MMM
d, yyyy,...}
  lastmod: "1376946254000"
  loaded: {APPLICATION@markup://auranote:notes:BUI3ODiAK-fwLFsL70ufNQ}
  mode: "DEV"
  requestedLocales: [en_US, en]
```

It is very similar to what was sent to the server in the request. The `context` has been updated and it might have some items added to it. In this example, now there are `globalValueProviders`. The action we just ran may cause us to go get more labels from the server. They come back in the `globalValueProviders` which is the global state. It is not specific to any action. The `loaded` list may have been updated as well. In this example, it went up and came back the same. However, if a component had been created on the server side then that would show up in the loaded list. This is for lazy-loading of metadata, which is very important from a performance standpoint.

The `actions` section of the response will look something like this:

```
actions: [{id:44.2, state:SUCCESS,...}]
  0: {id:44.2, state:SUCCESS,...}
    error: []
    id: "44.2"
    returnValue: {id:5, title:My Test Note, body:This is my note text,
createdOn:2013-08-19T21:15:28.062Z}
    state: "SUCCESS"
```

This is the response for the action that we sent out in the request. You can see that there were no errors. The id of the action is echoed back so that callbacks can be looked up so the framework can call the callback and pass it this return value. The possible values for `action.state` are `SUCCESS`, `FAILURE` and `INCOMPLETE`. `INCOMPLETE` means that the server couldn't be reached due to connectivity issues or the action was marked as abortable and new actions were pushed into the action queue before one or more abortable actions completed.

Earlier, we examined the XHR request in the **Headers** tab and saw that the `saveNote` action of the `NoteEditController` was being called. Thus, we can open the `NoteEditController.java` file in the `aura-note` sample application and look at the implementation of the `saveNote` function and observe that it returns a `Note` Java object. Next, if we look at `Note.java`, we see that the `Note` object is serializable and there is a method which creates the JSON payload that is eventually put into the action's `returnValue`. Both the client and the server side know that `saveNote` returns a `Note` and we will take this return value and turn it into something that looks like a note on the JavaScript side.

Understanding the Second Request

Click the second request in the **Network** tab and then click the **Headers** tab.

In the **Form Data** section, you can see that the descriptor of the action is on the `ComponentController` and is the `getComponent` action. This action is to get an instance of `auranote:noteList` and has no attributes. This action is for refreshing the list of notes on the left side of the app.

```
message:
{"actions":[{"id":"158.9","descriptor":"aura://ComponentController/ACTION$getComponent",
"params":{"name":"markup://auranote:noteList","attributes":{}}}]}
```

Understanding the Second Response

Click the **Preview** tab to view the server's response.

```
actions: [{id:158.9, state:SUCCESS, returnValue:{serId:1,...}, error:[],
components:{1:158.9:{serRefId:1}}}]
  0: {id:158.9, state:SUCCESS, returnValue:{serId:1,...}, error:[],
components:{1:158.9:{serRefId:1}}
    components: {1:158.9:{serRefId:1}}
    error: []
    id: "158.9"
    returnValue: {serId:1,...}
      serId: 1
      value: {componentDef:{serId:2, value:{descriptor:markup://auranote:noteList}},
globalId:1:158.9,...}
        attributes: {serId:3, value:{values:{sort:createdOn.desc}}}
        componentDef: {serId:2, value:{descriptor:markup://auranote:noteList}}
        globalId: "1:158.9"
```

```

        model: {notes:[{id:7, title:My Test Note, body:This is my note text,
createdOn:2013-08-20T03:35:54.034Z},...]}
        notes: [{id:7, title:My Test Note, body:This is my note text,
createdOn:2013-08-20T03:35:54.034Z},...]
            0: {id:7, title:My Test Note, body:This is my note text,
createdOn:2013-08-20T03:35:54.034Z}
            1: {id:4, title:My new note, body:lorem ipsum. ,
createdOn:2013-08-17T01:33:15.508Z}
        state: "SUCCESS"

```

The `actions.returnValue.value` section tells you the `componentDef` value. In this case, it just returns the descriptor which means we already know about `noteList` on the client side so we do not need to send the metadata again. The server generated this to tell the client side to create an instance of `noteList` with the `globalId` of `1:158.9`.

Next, look at the model:

```

model: {notes:[{id:7, title:My Test Note, body:This is my note text,
createdOn:2013-08-20T03:35:54.034Z},...]}
  notes: [{id:7, title:My Test Note, body:This is my note text,
createdOn:2013-08-20T03:35:54.034Z},...]
    0: {id:7, title:My Test Note, body:This is my note text,
createdOn:2013-08-20T03:35:54.034Z}
    1: {id:4, title:My new note, body:lorem ipsum. , createdOn:2013-08-17T01:33:15.508Z}

```

You can see what the model contains because the data is in a format that is readable. You can verify that the information being returned is correct.

For performance reasons, it is important to reduce the volume of data being transferred. There is a highly redundant structure in the JSON. Many objects are referenced over and over again. So, instead of sending the same data over and over again, and bloating the size of the responses, the JSON encoder on the server side figures out which objects have already been transferred. To do this, the framework uses reference serialization for metadata and assigns a serialization ID (`serId`) to each of these objects. This means that they can be referenced later. In the **Response** tab, you can see the `serId` for the `componentDef`, which is a reference to `noteList`:

```

"actions": [
  {
    "id": "158.9",
    "state": "SUCCESS",
    "returnValue": {
      "serId": 1,
      "value": {
        "componentDef": {
          "serId": 2,
          "value": {
            "descriptor": "markup://auranote:noteList"
          }
        }
      }
    }
  },
  ...
]

```

Although the network traffic initially looks like a lot of noise, it can yield valuable information to help you identify problems and performance hotspots.

SEE ALSO:

[Modes Reference](#)

[Abortable Actions](#)

[Testing Components](#)

Aura Debug Tool

The Aura debug tool outputs debug information about a component.



Note: You must disable the popup blocking feature of your web browser to use the debug tool.

It opens a separate browser window. The debug tool has the following tabs: Errors, Warnings, Components, Events, Storage, Accessibility, and Console.

To launch the Aura Debug tool, add the query string `aura.debugtool=true` after the URL of the component file that you are viewing in your browser. For example:

```
http://localhost:8080/auranote/noteList.cmp?aura.debugtool=true
```

To display additional statistics in the Components tab, append the query string `aura.mode=STATS` to the URL. For example:

```
http://localhost:8080/auranote/noteList.cmp?aura.debugtool=true&aura.mode=STATS
```

SEE ALSO:

[Modes Reference](#)

[Testing Components](#)

Querying State and Statistics

To aid debugging and testing, you can use the framework's query language to see the current state of certain objects in a running app. The query language is available in your browser's console for all modes, except for `PROD` mode.

You can get extra statistics about the app by running queries in `STATS` mode. This can help with performance tuning.

Viewing Help for Command-Line Options

To get usage instructions for the query language, run this command in your browser's console:

```
$A.qhelp()
```

Querying All Components

To query all components on a page, run:

```
$A.getQueryStatement().query()
```

Expand the `ResultSet` to drill into the components and their details. This query can return many components. To find the type of one of the components returned in the `rows` array, call `toString()`. For example, to get the type of the first returned component, run:

```
$A.getQueryStatement().query().rows[0].toString()
```

Selecting Fields

The default is to return all fields, but you can be more selective by using `field()`. For example, to return a few fields, run:

```
$A.getQueryStatement().field("toString, globalId").query()
```

Use a comma-separated list of fields or chain calls to `field()`. For example, this query mixes both types of `field()` syntax.

```
$A.getQueryStatement().field("toString, globalId").field("super").field("def").query()
```

You can use an expression as a field too. For example, to get the value of an attribute called `description`, run:

```
$A.getQueryStatement().field("toString, v.description").query()
```

If a field name doesn't match, the query engine also uses `get` and `is` prefixes to resolve function names. So, you can use the same syntax as your markup to access a field in your model, such as `m.firstName` to match the `getFirstName` method in the model's class.

Defining Derived Fields and Filtering

You can create a derived field by adding your own logic to process the fields available in the view that you're querying. Derive your own fields by using `field("derivedFieldName", "derivedFieldMethodChain")`. For example:

```
$A.getQueryStatement().field("descriptor", "getDef().getDescriptor().toString()").query()
```

Derived fields are particularly useful when you want to filter the query results using `where()`. For example:

```
$A.getQueryStatement().field("descriptor",
"getDef().getDescriptor().toString()").where("descriptor ==
'markup://aura:application'").query()
```

Choosing a View

All the queries so far have looked at components, but you can use `from()` to explore other views, such as `componentDef`. For example:

```
$A.getQueryStatement().from("componentDef").query()
```

If the query doesn't include `from()`, the default is the `component` view.

To get a list of available views, run:

```
$A.devToolService.views
```

Use the `STATS` mode to see extra views for value objects.

Querying Value Objects

You can query value objects in `STATS` mode. For example:

```
$A.getQueryStatement().from("value").field("toString").query()
```

Grouping by Fields

Use `groupBy` to group your results by a field. For example, to group by the different types of value objects, run:

```
$A.getQueryStatement().from("value").field("toString").groupBy("toString").query()
```

Diffing Query Result Sets

To get a diff between two result sets, use `diff()`. For example:

```
var before = $A.getQueryStatement().query(); var after = $A.getQueryStatement().query();  
after.diff(before);
```

This is useful if you want to perform operations between running the `before` and `after` queries and analyze the diff between the two result sets.

CUSTOMIZING AURA

CHAPTER 24 Plugging in Custom Code with Adapters

In this chapter ...

- [Default Adapters](#)
- [Overriding Default Adapters](#)

Aura has a set of adapters that provide default implementations of functionality that you can override. For example, the localization adapter provides the default behavior for working with labels and locales. You may want to override this behavior for your own localization requirements.

Think of an adapter as a plugin point for your custom code. It's useful to contrast this with the Aura Integration Service, which enables you to inject Aura components into a Web app that is not developed in Aura.

`AuraAdapter` is the base marker interface for all adapters. You can find all the adapter interfaces in the `org.auraframework.adapter` package.

SEE ALSO:

[Default Adapters](#)

[Overriding Default Adapters](#)

[Accessing Components from Non-Aura Containers](#)

Default Adapters

Aura has a set of default adapters.

Adapter	Description
<code>ComponentLocationAdapter</code>	Provides the default location for storing component source files. The default is to store components on the filesystem but you could override this to store them in a database.
<code>ConfigAdapter</code>	Provides many defaults, including the set of available modes, and the version of the Aura framework.
<code>ContextAdapter</code>	Provides the default context. Every request in Aura is associated with a context. After initial loading of an app, each subsequent request is an XHR POST that contains your Aura context configuration, which includes the mode to run in, the name of the app, and the namespaces that already have metadata loaded on the client.
<code>ExceptionHandler</code>	Provides the default exception handling. The default is to log the exception.
<code>ExpressionAdapter</code>	Provides the default expression language.
<code>FormatAdapter</code>	Provides the default implementations for reading and writing different resources, such as Aura markup, CSS, or JSON.
<code>GlobalValueProviderAdapter</code>	Provides the global value providers. Global value providers are global values, such as <code>\$Label</code> , that a component can use in expressions.
<code>JsonSerializerAdapter</code>	Provides the default JSON serializers. You can use this adapter to customize how Aura locates the correct serializer implementation to marshall objects to and from JSON.
<code>LocalizationAdapter</code>	Provides the default label and locale handling.
<code>LoggingAdapter</code>	Provides the default logging.
<code>PrefixDefaultsAdapter</code>	Provides the default prefixes for Aura definitions. Each definition describes metadata for an element, such as a component, event, controller, or model.
<code>RegistryAdapter</code>	Provides the default registries. Registries store metadata definitions. Some registries last for the duration of a request, while others are cached for the lifetime of an app.
<code>StyleAdapter</code>	Provides the default CSS themes.

SEE ALSO:

[Plugging in Custom Code with Adapters](#)

[Overriding Default Adapters](#)

Overriding Default Adapters

There are several ways to override the default adapters.

To override one of the default adapters:

1. Extend an existing adapter or create a new class that implements the adapter interface that you're overriding.

2. Use the `@Override` annotation on each interface method that you implement.

SEE ALSO:

[Plugging in Custom Code with Adapters](#)

[Default Adapters](#)

[Customizing your Label Implementation](#)

CHAPTER 25 Accessing Components from Non-Aura Containers

In this chapter ...

- [Add an Aura button inside an HTML div container](#)

The Aura Integration Service enables plugging Aura components into non-Aura HTML containers.


Because Aura requires an app to start and to render components, the Aura Integration Service creates and manages an internal integration app on your behalf for the components you're embedding. This makes it easy to use Aura components in an HTML-based application.

Also, the Aura Integration Service allows partial page updates. You can add additional components to a page that has already been loaded and after an app has already been created.

An Aura component instance is embedded in a page inside a script tag and is bound to its parent DOM element.

The Aura Integration Service provides a set of Java APIs that allow you to embed a component. The Java APIs are included in the following interfaces and their class implementations.

- `IntegrationService` Interface (implemented by `IntegrationServiceImpl`): Enables the creation of an integration using the `createIntegration()` method.
- `Integration` Interface (implemented by `IntegrationImpl`): Enables adding components using the `injectComponent()` method.

 **Note:** The Aura History Service and Aura Layout Service are not supported with the Aura Integration Service, and hence embedded components can't make use of these services.

SEE ALSO:

[Customizing Behavior with Modes](#)

[Component IDs](#)

Add an Aura button inside an HTML div container

The Aura Integration Service enables you to plug Aura components into HTML containers.

1. Create a Java instance of the Aura Integration Service.

```
IntegrationService svc = Aura.getIntegrationService();
```

2. Create an integration, which enables you to embed components in your page.

- For the first argument, pass the context path. For servlets in the default root context, it is an empty string.
- For the second argument, pass the mode. In this example, we're specifying the `DEV` mode.
- For the third argument, pass a Boolean value to indicate whether Aura should create an integration app or not. In this case, we're passing `true`. If you want to perform a partial page update, pass `false` for the third argument. This enables you to add more components after a page has been loaded and an app has already been created.

```
Integration integ = svc.createIntegration("", Mode.DEV, true);
```

3. Call the `injectComponent` method to embed a component in a parent container.

- For the first argument, pass the component's fully qualified name. In this case, it is `"ui:button"`.
- For the second argument, pass the component's attributes as a map. This example creates a map with one attribute and passes it as the second argument.
- For the third argument, pass the local component ID. In this example, it is `"button1"`.
- For the fourth argument, pass the DOM identifier for the parent container element. In this example, it is `"div1"`.
- For the fifth argument, pass a buffer that will contain the script output.
- For the sixth argument, pass a boolean set to `true` to use asynchronous component creation for the injected component instead of the default method of printing the component HTML to the page. The asynchronous option is more performant if you are injecting multiple components.

```
Map<String, Object> attributes = Maps.newHashMap();
attributes.put("label", "Click Me");
Appendable out = new StringBuffer();
boolean async = true;
integration.injectComponent("ui:button", attributes, "button1", "div1", out, async);
```



Example: This is the full listing of the sample.

```
IntegrationService svc = Aura.getIntegrationService();
Integration integration = svc.createIntegration("", Mode.DEV, true);
Map<String, Object> attributes = Maps.newHashMap();
attributes.put("label", "Click Me");
Appendable out = new StringBuffer();
boolean async = true;
integration.injectComponent("ui:button", attributes, "button1", "div1", out, async);
```

CHAPTER 26 Customizing Data Type Conversions

In this chapter ...

- [Registering Custom Converters](#)
- [Custom Converters](#)

A custom converter enables the conversion of one Java type to another Java type for client data sent to the server or for server markup data.

When a client calls a server-side controller action, data that the client sends, such as input parameters for a server action, is sent in JSON format. The JSON representation of data is converted to target Java types on the server. Similarly, values in Aura markup on the server, such as component attribute values, are evaluated as Java strings. These strings are converted to corresponding Java types. For primitive Java types, the type conversion is implicit and doesn't require the addition of any converters. For example, a JSON string is converted to a Java string, and a JSON list is converted to a Java ArrayList. For custom types, or when there is no one-to-one mapping between the source value and the target type, Aura calls the custom converter that you provide to create an instance of the custom Java type corresponding to the JSON representation on the client or the markup attribute value on the server.

An example of a custom converter is a converter used to convert comma-delimited string values to an ArrayList. A component attribute of type List can have a default value in markup of a comma-delimited string of values. Aura converts this attribute string value into an ArrayList by calling the custom String to ArrayList converter.

SEE ALSO:

[Custom Java Class Types](#)

[Creating Server-Side Logic with Controllers](#)

[Supported aura:attribute Types](#)

Registering Custom Converters

Register a custom converter to enable conversion of one Java type to another Java type when sending data to and from the server.

To register a custom converter:

1. Create a class that implements the `Converter` interface. Add `implements Converter<Type1, Type2>` at the end of the first line of your class definition, after the class name. Replace `Type1` with the original Java type and `Type2` with the target Java type. Next, implement each method in the `Converter` interface. For better readability of your code, we recommend you name the class using the format `Type1ToType2Converter`. This is an example of a skeletal class implementing the `Converter` interface. `Type1` and `Type2` are placeholders for the Java original type and the converted type, respectively.

```
public class Type1ToType2Converter implements Converter<Type1, Type2> {

    @Override
    public Type2 convert(Type1 value) {
        // Convert value into a value of Type2 and return it.
        // Return converted value.
    }

    @Override
    public Class<Type1> getFrom() {
        // return Type1.class;
    }

    @Override
    public Class<Type2> getTo() {
        // return Type2.class;
    }

    @Override
    public Class<?>[] getToParameters() {
        // Return the types contained in the custom type.
    }

}
```

2. Create another class annotated with `@AuraConfiguration`. The class must be in the `configuration` package.
3. Add a `public static` method to this class annotated with `@Impl`. The method should return either the `Converter<?, ?>` type or `Converter<Type1, Type2>` with the actual original and target Java types. The method returns a new instance of the class you created earlier, which implements the `Converter` interface.

```
package configuration;

@AuraConfiguration
public class MyTypeConverterConfig {
    @Impl
    public static Converter<Type1, Type2> exampleTypeConverter() {
        return new Type1ToType2Converter();
    }
}
```

4. To specify additional conversions, repeat the previous steps. Each new conversion requires a converter implementation class and the addition of a corresponding method to the `Aura` configuration class.

Custom Converters

Here are a few examples of custom converters.

Example 1: Custom Type Conversion for a Component Attribute

This example shows how to add a converter to convert an attribute string value to the corresponding custom type. It contains the definition of the custom type, `MyCustomType`, an example of the attribute, the corresponding converter, and a method in the Aura configuration class.

This is the definition of the custom type, `MyCustomType`.

```
package doc.sample;

public class MyCustomType implements JsonSerializable {
    private String val;

    public MyCustomType(String val) {
        this.val = val;
    }

    @Override
    public void serialize(Json json) throws IOException {
        json.writeString(val);
    }
}
```

This is the attribute of type `MyCustomType` with a default value of `"x"`.

```
<aura:attribute name="myObj" type="java://doc.sample.MyCustomType" default="x"/>
```

This is the converter implementation for converting a string (the attribute value) to an object of type `MyCustomType` (the target Java type).

```
public class StringToMyCustomTypeConverter implements Converter<String, MyCustomType> {

    @Override
    public MyCustomType convert(String value) {
        return new MyCustomType(value);
    }

    @Override
    public Class<String> getFrom() {
        return String.class;
    }

    @Override
    public Class<MyCustomType> getTo() {
        return MyCustomType.class;
    }

    @Override
    public Class<?>[] getToParameters() {
        return null;
    }
}
```

```

    }
}

```

This is the corresponding Aura Configuration method.

```

package configuration;

@AuraConfiguration
public class MyCustomTypeConverterConfig {
    @Impl
    public static Converter<String, MyCustomType> exampleTypeConverter() {
        return new StringToMyCustomTypeConverter();
    }
}

```

Example 2: Parameterized Type Conversion for a Server Action Call

This example shows how to add a converter to convert the type of a parameter passed to a server-side controller action call that a client makes. The target type of the conversion is a parameterized type, `List<MyCustomType>`, which is a list of `MyCustomType` objects.

This example is based on the `MyCustomType` class defined earlier.

This is the client call to the `accept` action on the server-side controller. The client passes an array of three string values that corresponds to a list of `MyCustomType` objects. Because the parameter value is an array of objects, the original type of the conversion is `ArrayList`.

```

custom : function(c) {
    var a = c.get("c.accept");
    a.setParams({myObjs:["x","y","z"]});
    $A.enqueueAction(a);
},

```

This is how the `accept` method looks in the server-side controller. Notice the parameter of the `accept` method is of type `List<MyCustomType>`. This is the target type of the conversion.

```

@AuraEnabled
public static void accept(@Key("myObjs") List<MyCustomType> myObjs) {
    for (MyCustomType obj : myObjs) {
        System.err.println("MyCustomType:" + obj);
    }
}

```

This is the converter implementation that converts an `ArrayList` (the parameter array sent by the client) to a `List` of `MyCustomType` objects on the server.

```

public class ArrayListToMyCustomTypeListConverter implements Converter<ArrayList, List> {

    @Override
    public List<MyCustomType> convert(ArrayList value) {
        List<MyCustomType> retList = Lists.newLinkedList();
        for (Object part : value) {
            retList.add(new MyCustomType(part.toString()));
        }
    }
}

```



```

        return retList;
    }

    @Override
    public Class<ArrayList> getFrom() {
        return ArrayList.class;
    }

    @Override
    public Class<List> getTo() {
        return List.class;
    }

    @Override
    public Class<?>[] getToParameters() {
        return new Class[] { MyCustomType.class };
    }
}

```

This is the corresponding Aura Configuration method.

```

package configuration;

@AuraConfiguration
public class MyCustomTypeListConverterConfig {
    @Impl
    public static Converter<ArrayList, List<MyCustomType>> exampleTypeConverter() {
        return new ArrayListToList<MyCustomType>Converter();
    }
}

```

Example 3: Parameterized Type Conversion for a Component Attribute

This example is similar to the previous one except that the conversion is done for an attribute value. In this example, consider the following attribute that holds a list of `MyCustomType` objects and with a default value of `"x,y,z"`. Because the attribute value is a string, the original type of the conversion is `String`. The target type is `List<MyCustomType>`.

This example is based on the `MyCustomType` class defined earlier.

```

<aura:attribute name="myObjs" type="java://java.util.List<doc.sample.MyCustomType>"
default="x,y,z"/>

```

This is the converter implementation for converting a string to a list of `MyCustomType` objects.

```

public class StringToMyCustomTypeListConverter implements Converter<String, List> {

    @Override
    public List<MyCustomType> convert(String value) {
        List<MyCustomType> retList = Lists.newLinkedList();
        for (String part : AuraTextUtil.splitSimple(",", value)) {
            retList.add(new MyCustomType(part));
        }
        return retList;
    }
}

```

```
@Override
public Class<String> getFrom() {
    return String.class;
}

@Override
public Class<List> getTo() {
    return List.class;
}

@Override
public Class<?>[] getToParameters() {
    return new Class[] { MyCustomType.class };
}
}
```

This is the corresponding Aura Configuration method.

```
package configuration;

@AuraConfiguration
public class MyCustomTypeList2ConverterConfig {
    @Impl
    public static Converter<String, List<MyCustomType>> exampleTypeConverter() {
        return new StringToList<MyCustomType>Converter();
    }
}
```

REFERENCE

CHAPTER 27 Reference Overview

In this chapter ...

- [Reference Doc App](#)
- [aura:application](#)
- [aura:component](#)
- [aura:clientLibrary](#)
- [aura:dependency](#)
- [aura:event](#)
- [aura:if](#)
- [aura:interface](#)
- [aura:iteration](#)
- [aura:method](#)
- [aura:renderIf](#)
- [aura:set](#)
- [System Event Reference](#)
- [Supported HTML Tags](#)
- [Supported aura:attribute Types](#)

This section contains reference documentation including details of the various tags available in the framework.

Reference Doc App

The [Reference tab](#) of the doc app includes more reference information, including descriptions and source for the out-of-the-box components that come with the framework.

aura:application

An app is a special top-level component whose markup is in a `.app` file.

The markup looks similar to HTML and can contain components as well as a set of supported HTML tags. The `.app` file is a standalone entry point for the app and enables you to define the overall application layout, style sheets, and global JavaScript includes. It starts with the top-level `<aura:application>` tag, which contains optional system attributes. These system attributes tell the framework how to configure the app.

System Attribute	Type	Description
<code>access</code>	String	Indicates whether the app can be extended by another app outside of a namespace. Possible values are <code>internal</code> (default), <code>public</code> , and <code>global</code> .
<code>controller</code>	String	The server-side controller class for the app. The format is <code>java://<package.class></code> .
<code>description</code>	String	A brief description of the app.
<code>extends</code>	Component	The app to be extended, if applicable. For example, <code>extends="namespace:yourApp"</code> .
<code>extensible</code>	Boolean	Indicates whether the app is extensible by another app. Defaults to <code>false</code> .
<code>implements</code>	String	A comma-separated list of interfaces that the app implements.
<code>locationChangeEvent</code>	Event	The framework monitors the location of the current window for changes. If the <code>#</code> value in a URL changes, the framework fires an application event. The <code>locationChangeEvent</code> defines this event. The default value is <code>aura:locationChange</code> . The <code>locationChange</code> event has a single attribute called <code>token</code> , which is set with everything after the <code>#</code> value in the URL.
<code>model</code>	String	The model class used to initialize data for the app. The format is <code>java://<package.class></code> .
<code>preload</code>	String	Deprecated. Use the aura:dependency tag instead. If you use the <code>preload</code> system attribute, the framework internally converts the value to <code><aura:dependency></code> tags.
<code>render</code>	String	Renders the component using client-side or server-side renderers. If not provided, the framework determines any dependencies and whether the application should be rendered client-side or server-side. Valid options are <code>client</code> or <code>server</code> . The default is <code>auto</code> . For example, specify <code>render="client"</code> if you want to inspect the application on the client-side during testing.

System Attribute	Type	Description
renderer	String	Only use this system attribute if you want to use a custom client-side or server-side renderer. If you don't set a renderer, the framework uses its default rendering, which is sufficient for most use cases. If you don't define this system attribute, your application is autowired to a client-side renderer named <appName>Renderer.js , if it exists in your application bundle.
template	Component	The name of the template used to bootstrap the loading of the framework and the app. The default value is <code>aura:template</code> . You can customize the template by creating your own component that extends the default template. For example: <code><aura:component extends="aura:template" ... ></code>
useAppcache	Boolean	Specifies whether to use the application cache. Valid options are <code>true</code> or <code>false</code> . Defaults to <code>false</code> .

`aura:application` also includes a `body` attribute defined in a `<aura:attribute>` tag. Attributes usually control the output or behavior of a component, but not the configuration information in system attributes.

Attribute	Type	Description
body	Component []	The body of the app. In markup, this is everything in the body of the tag.

SEE ALSO:

[URL-Centric Navigation](#)

[App Basics](#)

[Using the AppCache](#)

[Application Access Control](#)

aura:component

A component is represented by the `aura:component` tag, which has the following optional attributes.

Attribute	Type	Description
abstract	Boolean	Set to <code>true</code> if the component is abstract, or <code>false</code> otherwise.
access	String	Indicates whether the component can be used outside of its own namespace. Possible values are <code>internal</code> (default), <code>public</code> , and <code>global</code> .
controller	String	The server-side controller class for the component. The format is <code>java://<package.class></code> .
description	String	A description of the component.

Attribute	Type	Description
<code>extends</code>	Component	The component to be extended, if applicable. For example, <code>extends="ui:input"</code> .
<code>extensible</code>	Boolean	Set to <code>true</code> if the component can be extended, or <code>false</code> otherwise.
<code>implements</code>	String	A comma-separated list of interfaces that the component implements.
<code>model</code>	String	The model class used to initialize data for the component. The format is <code>java://<package.class></code> .
<code>render</code>	String	<p>Renders the component using client-side or server-side renderers. If not provided, the framework determines any dependencies and whether the component should be rendered client- or server-side.</p> <p>Valid options are <code>client</code> or <code>server</code>. The default is <code>auto</code>.</p> <p>Specify this attribute in the top-level component. For example, specify <code>render="client"</code> if you want to inspect the component on the client-side during testing.</p>
<code>support</code>	String	The support level for the component. Valid options are <code>PROTO</code> , <code>DEPRECATED</code> , <code>BETA</code> , or <code>GA</code> .

`aura:component` also includes a `body` attribute defined in a `<aura:attribute>` tag. Attributes usually control the output or behavior of a component, but not the configuration information in system attributes.

Attribute	Type	Description
<code>body</code>	Component []	The body of the component. In markup, this is everything in the body of the tag.

aura:clientLibrary

The `<aura:clientLibrary>` tag enables you to specify JavaScript or CSS libraries that you want to use. Use the tag in a `.cmp` or `.app` resource.

Here is some example markup for including client libraries in a component.

```
<!-- External URL -->
<aura:clientLibrary url="http://jquery.org/latest/jquery.js" type="JS" />
<!-- Absolute path for local library-->
<aura:clientLibrary url="/absolute/path/to/file.js" type="JS" />
<!-- Relative path for local library-->
<aura:clientLibrary url="relative/path/to/file.css" type="CSS" />
```

The `<aura:clientLibrary>` tag includes these system attributes.

System Attribute	Description
combine	<p>If set to <code>true</code>, the library is added to <code>resources.js</code> or <code>resources.css</code>. This option is only available for resources that are available on the local server, for example under the <code>aura-resources</code> folder.</p> <p>Combining libraries into one file can improve performance by reducing the number of requests, instead of a separate request for each library.</p>
modes	A comma-separated list of modes that use the client library. If no value is set, the library is available for all modes.
name	<p>The name of a <code>ClientLibraryResolver</code> that provides the URL. The <code>name</code> attribute is useful if the location or URL of the library needs to be dynamically generated.</p> <p>The <code>name</code> attribute is required if the <code>url</code> attribute is not specified; otherwise, it's ignored. See Add a Client Library Resolver on page 237.</p>
type	The type of library. Values are <code>CSS</code> , or <code>JS</code> for JavaScript.
url	<p>The external URL or path to the file on the server for the library. Examples are:</p> <pre>http://jquery.org/latest/jquery.js</pre> <pre>/absolute/path/to/file.js</pre> <pre>relative/path/to/file.css</pre>

Add a Client Library Resolver

1. Create a class that extends the `ClientLibraryServiceImpl` Java class.

```
import org.auraframework.def.ClientLibraryDef;
import org.auraframework.impl.clientlibrary.resolver.AuraResourceResolver;
import org.auraframework.impl.clientlibrary.ClientLibraryServiceImpl;

public class SampleClientLibraryService extends ClientLibraryServiceImpl {
    ...
}
```

2. In the constructor, register your new resolver that points to the client library. For example, to register a `MadLib` external JavaScript library:

```
public SampleClientLibraryService() {
    super();
    // Register external JavaScript library
    // This is a just a sample. Resolvers are more useful if the URL
    // needs to be dynamically generated.
    getResolverRegistry().register(new AuraResourceResolver(
        "MadLib", ClientLibraryDef.Type.JS,
        "http://www.docsample.org/madlib.js",
        "http://www.docsample.org/madlib.js"));
}
```

3. Create a new configuration class to direct the service loader to use the new `SampleClientLibraryService` class instead of the default `ClientLibraryServiceImpl` class. Note that Spring looks for this class in the `configuration` package.

```
package configuration;

@AuraConfiguration
public class SampleLibraryServiceConfig {
    @Impl
    @Primary
    public ClientLibraryService customClientLibraryService() {
        return new SampleClientLibraryService();
    }
}
```

SEE ALSO:

[Styling Apps](#)

[Using External JavaScript Libraries](#)

aura:dependency

The `<aura:dependency>` tag enables you to declare dependencies that can't easily be discovered by the framework.

The framework automatically tracks dependencies between definitions, such as components. This enables the framework to automatically reload when it detects that you've changed a definition during development. However, if a component uses a client- or server-side provider that instantiates components that are not directly referenced in the component's markup, use `<aura:dependency>` in the component's markup to explicitly tell the framework about the dependency. Adding the `<aura:dependency>` tag ensures that a component and its dependencies are sent to the client, when needed.

For example, adding this tag to a component marks the `aura:placeholder` component as a dependency.

```
<aura:dependency resource="markup://aura:placeholder" />
```

The `<aura:dependency>` tag includes these system attributes.

System Attribute	Description
resource	<p>The resource that the component depends on. For example, <code>resource="markup://sampleNamespace:sampleComponent"</code> refers to the <code>sampleComponent</code> in the <code>sampleNamespace</code> namespace.</p> <p>Use an asterisk (*) in the resource name for wildcard matching. For example, <code>resource="markup://sampleNamespace:*"</code> matches everything in the namespace; <code>resource="markup://sampleNamespace:input*"</code> matches everything in the namespace that starts with <code>input</code>.</p>
type	<p>The type of resource that the component depends on. The default value is <code>COMPONENT</code>. Use <code>type="*"</code> to match all types of resources.</p> <p>The most commonly used values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <code>COMPONENT</code> • <code>APPLICATION</code>

System Attribute	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• <code>EVENT</code> <p>Use a comma-separated list for multiple types; for example: <code>COMPONENT, APPLICATION</code>.</p>

SEE ALSO:

[Client-Side Runtime Binding of Components](#)

[Server-Side Runtime Binding of Components](#)

[Dynamically Creating Components](#)

aura:event

An event is represented by the `aura:event` tag, which has the following attributes.

Attribute	Type	Description
<code>access</code>	String	Indicates whether the event can be extended or used outside of its own namespace. Possible values are <code>internal</code> (default), <code>public</code> , and <code>global</code> .
<code>description</code>	String	A description of the event.
<code>extends</code>	Component	The event to be extended. For example, <code>extends="namespace:myEvent"</code> .
<code>type</code>	String	Required. Possible values are <code>COMPONENT</code> or <code>APPLICATION</code> .
<code>support</code>	String	The support level for the event. Valid options are <code>PROTO</code> , <code>DEPRECATED</code> , <code>BETA</code> , or <code>GA</code> .

SEE ALSO:

[Events](#)

[Event Access Control](#)

aura:if

`aura:if` renders the content within the tag if the `isTrue` attribute evaluates to true.

The framework evaluates the `isTrue` expression on the server and instantiates components either in its `body` or `else` attribute.



Note: `aura:if` instantiates the components in either its body or the `else` attribute, but not both. `aura:renderIf` instantiates both the components in its body and the `else` attribute, but only renders one. If the state of `isTrue` changes, `aura:if` has to first instantiate the components for the other state and then render them. We recommend using `aura:if` instead of `aura:renderIf` to improve performance.

Attribute Name	Type	Description
<code>else</code>	<code>ComponentDefRef[]</code>	The markup to render when <code>isTrue</code> evaluates to false. Set this attribute using the <code>aura:set</code> tag.
<code>isTrue</code>	<code>string</code>	Required. An expression that determines whether the content is displayed. If it evaluates to <code>true</code> , the content is displayed.

Example

This snippet of markup uses the `<aura:if>` tag to conditionally display an edit button.

```
<aura:attribute name="edit" type="Boolean" default="true">
<aura:if isTrue="{!v.edit}">
  <ui:button label="Edit"/>
  <aura:set attribute="else">
    You can't edit this.
  </aura:set>
</aura:if>
```

If the `edit` attribute is set to `true`, a `ui:button` displays. Otherwise, the text in the `else` attribute displays.

SEE ALSO:

[Best Practices for Conditional Markup](#)

[aura:renderIf](#)

aura:interface

The `aura:interface` tag has the following optional attributes.

Attribute	Type	Description
<code>access</code>	<code>String</code>	Indicates whether the interface can be extended or used outside of its own namespace. Possible values are <code>internal</code> (default), <code>public</code> , and <code>global</code> .
<code>description</code>	<code>String</code>	A description of the interface.
<code>extends</code>	<code>Component</code>	The comma-separated list of interfaces to be extended. For example, <code>extends="namespace:intfB"</code> .
<code>provider</code>	<code>String</code>	The provider for the interface.
<code>support</code>	<code>String</code>	The support level for the interface. Valid options are <code>PROTO</code> , <code>DEPRECATED</code> , <code>BETA</code> , or <code>GA</code> .

SEE ALSO:

[Interfaces](#)

[Interface Access Control](#)

aura:iteration

`aura:iteration` iterates over a collection of items and renders the body of the tag for each item.

Data changes in the collection are rerendered automatically on the page. `aura:iteration` supports iterations containing components that have server-side dependencies or that can be created exclusively on the client-side.

Attribute Name	Type	Description
<code>body</code>	<code>ComponentDefRef[]</code>	Required. Template to use when creating components for each iteration. You can put any markup in the <code>body</code> . A <code>ComponentDefRef[]</code> stores the metadata of the component instances to create on each iteration, and each instance is then stored in <code>realbody</code> .
<code>end</code>	<code>Integer</code>	The index of the collection to stop at (exclusive).
<code>forceServer</code>	<code>Boolean</code>	Force a server request for the component body. Set to <code>true</code> if the iteration requires any server-side creation. The default is <code>false</code> .
<code>indexVar</code>	<code>String</code>	The variable name to use for the index of each item inside the iteration.
<code>items</code>	<code>List</code>	Required. The collection of data to iterate over.
<code>realbody</code>	<code>Component[]</code>	Do not use. Any value set is ignored. Placeholder for body rendering.
<code>start</code>	<code>Integer</code>	The index of the collection to start at (inclusive).
<code>var</code>	<code>String</code>	Required. The variable name to use for each item inside the iteration.

This example shows how you can use `aura:iteration` exclusively on the client-side with an HTML `meter` tag.

```
<aura:component>
  <aura:iteration items="1,2,3,4,5" var="item">
    <meter value="{!item / 5}"/><br/>
  </aura:iteration>
</aura:component>
```

The output shows five meters with ascending values of one to five.

SEE ALSO:

[Client-Side Runtime Binding of Components](#)

[Server-Side Runtime Binding of Components](#)

aura:method

Use `<aura:method>` to define a method as part of a component's API. This enables you to directly call a method in a component's client-side controller instead of firing and handling a component event. It also enables a parent component to call a method on a child component that it contains.

The `<aura:method>` tag has these system attributes.

Attribute	Type	Description
name	String	The method name. Use the method name to call the method in JavaScript code. For example: <pre>cmp.sampleMethod(param1);</pre>
action	Expression	The client-side controller action to execute. For example: <pre>action="{!c.sampleAction}"</pre> <code>sampleAction</code> is an action in the client-side controller. If you don't specify an <code>action</code> value, the controller action defaults to the value of the method <code>name</code> .
access	String	The access control for the method. Valid values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • internal—Any component in a system namespace can call the method. A system namespace is a privileged namespace that has access to all components. This is the default access level. • public—Any component in the same namespace can call the method. • global—Any component in any namespace can call the method.
description	String	The method description.

Declaring Parameters

An `<aura:method>` can optionally include parameters. Use an `<aura:attribute>` tag within an `<aura:method>` to declare a parameter for the method. For example:

```
<aura:method name="sampleMethod" action="{!c.doAction}" access="PUBLIC"
  description="Sample method with parameters">
  <aura:attribute name="param1" type="String" default="parameter 1"/>
  <aura:attribute name="param2" type="Object" />
</aura:method>
```

 **Note:** You don't need an `access` system attribute in the `<aura:attribute>` tag for a parameter.

Creating a Handler Action

This handler action shows how to access the arguments passed to the method.

```
((  
    doAction : function(cmp, event) {  
        var params = event.getParam('arguments');  
        if (params) {  
            var param1 = params.param1;  
            // add your code here  
        }  
    }  
))
```

Retrieve the arguments using `event.getParam('arguments')`. It returns an object if there are arguments or an empty array if there are no arguments.

SEE ALSO:

[Calling Component Methods](#)

[Component Events](#)

aura:renderIf

`aura:renderIf` renders the content within the tag if the `isTrue` attribute evaluates to `true`.

Only consider using `aura:renderIf` if you expect to show the components for both the `true` and `false` states, and it would require a server round trip to instantiate the components that aren't initially rendered. Otherwise, use `aura:if` as it only creates and renders the markup in its body or the `else` attribute.

Attribute Name	Type	Description
<code>else</code>	<code>Component[]</code>	The markup to render when <code>isTrue</code> evaluates to <code>false</code> . Set this attribute using the <code>aura:set</code> tag.
<code>isTrue</code>	<code>String</code>	Required. An expression that determines whether the content is displayed. If it evaluates to <code>true</code> , the content is displayed.

Example

This snippet of markup uses the `<aura:renderIf>` tag to conditionally display an edit button.

```
<aura:attribute name="edit" type="Boolean" default="true">  
<aura:renderIf isTrue="{!v.edit}">  
    <ui:button label="Edit"/>  
    <aura:set attribute="else">  
        You can't edit this.  
        <!-- Imagine some components here that need to be created on the server -->  
    </aura:set>  
</aura:renderIf>
```

If the `edit` attribute is set to `true`, a `ui:button` displays. Otherwise, the text in the `else` attribute displays.

We recommend using `aura:if` instead if the `else` attribute is rarely displayed or if it doesn't include components that need to be created on the server.

SEE ALSO:

[Best Practices for Conditional Markup](#)

[aura:if](#)

aura:set

Use `<aura:set>` in markup to set the value of an attribute inherited from a super component, event, or interface.

To learn more, see:

- [Setting Attributes Inherited from a Super Component](#)
- [Setting Attributes on a Component Reference](#)
- [Setting Attributes Inherited from an Interface](#)

Setting Attributes Inherited from a Super Component

Use `<aura:set>` in the markup of a sub component to set the value of an inherited attribute.

Let's look at an example. Here is the `docsample:setTagSuper` component.

```
<!--docsample:setTagSuper-->
<aura:component extensible="true">
    <aura:attribute name="address1" type="String" />
    setTagSuper address1: {!v.address1}<br/>
</aura:component>
```

`docsample:setTagSuper` outputs:

```
setTagSuper address1:
```

The `address1` attribute doesn't output any value yet as it hasn't been set.

Here is the `docsample:setTagSub` component that extends `docsample:setTagSuper`.

```
<!--docsample:setTagSub-->
<aura:component extends="docsample:setTagSuper">
    <aura:set attribute="address1" value="808 State St" />
</aura:component>
```

`docsample:setTagSub` outputs:

```
setTagSuper address1: 808 State St
```

`sampleSetTagExdocsample:setTagSub` sets a value for the `address1` attribute inherited from the super component, `docsample:setTagSuper`.



Warning: This usage of `<aura:set>` works for components and abstract components, but it doesn't work for interfaces. For more information, see [Setting Attributes Inherited from an Interface](#) on page 246.

If you're using a component by making a reference to it in your component, you can set the attribute value directly in the markup. For example, `docsample:setTagSuperRef` makes a reference to `docsample:setTagSuper` and sets the `address1` attribute directly without using `aura:set`.

```
<!--docsample:setTagSuperRef-->
<aura:component>
    <docsample:setTagSuper address1="1 Sesame St" />
</aura:component>
```

`docsample:setTagSuperRef` outputs:

```
setTagSuper address1: 1 Sesame St
```

SEE ALSO:

[Component Body](#)

[Inherited Component Attributes](#)

[Setting Attributes on a Component Reference](#)

Setting Attributes on a Component Reference

When you include another component, such as `<ui:button>`, in a component, we call that a component reference to `<ui:button>`. You can use `<aura:set>` to set an attribute on the component reference. For example, if your component includes a reference to `<ui:button>`:

```
<ui:button label="Save">
    <aura:set attribute="buttonTitle" value="Click to save the record"/>
</ui:button>
```

This is equivalent to:

```
<ui:button label="Save" buttonTitle="Click to save the record" />
```

The latter syntax without `aura:set` makes more sense in this simple example. You can also use this simpler syntax in component references to set values for attributes that are inherited from parent components.

`aura:set` is more useful when you want to set markup as the attribute value. For example, this sample specifies the markup for the `else` attribute in the `aura:if` tag.

```
<aura:component>
    <aura:attribute name="display" type="Boolean" default="true"/>
    <aura:if isTrue="{!v.display}">
        Show this if condition is true
        <aura:set attribute="else">
            <ui:button label="Save" press="{!c.saveRecord}" />
        </aura:set>
    </aura:if>
</aura:component>
```

SEE ALSO:

[Setting Attributes Inherited from a Super Component](#)

Setting Attributes Inherited from an Interface

To set the value of an attribute inherited from an interface, redefine the attribute in the component and set its default value. Let's look at an example with the `docsample:myIntf` interface.

```
<!--docsample:myIntf-->
<aura:interface>
    <aura:attribute name="myBoolean" type="Boolean" default="true" />
</aura:interface>
```

This component implements the interface and sets `myBoolean` to `false`.

```
<!--docsample:myIntfImpl-->
<aura:component>
    <aura:attribute name="myBoolean" type="Boolean" default="false" />

    <p>myBoolean: {!v.myBoolean}</p>
</aura:component>
```

System Event Reference

System events are fired by the framework during its lifecycle. You can handle these events in your Lightning apps or components, and within Salesforce1. For example, these events enable you to handle attribute value changes, URL changes, or when the app or component is waiting for a server response.

aura:doneRendering

Indicates that the initial rendering of the root application or root component has completed.

This event is automatically fired if no more components need to be rendered or rerendered due to any attribute value changes. The `aura:doneRendering` event is handled by a client-side controller. A component can have only one `<aura:handler event="doneRendering">` tag to handle this event.

```
<aura:handler event="aura:doneRendering" action="{!c.doneRendering}"/>
```

For example, you want to customize the behavior of your app after it's finished rendering the first time but not after subsequent rerenderings. Create an attribute to determine if it's the first rendering.


```
<aura:component>
    <aura:handler event="aura:doneRendering" action="{!c.doneRendering}"/>
    <aura:attribute name="isDoneRendering" type="Boolean" default="false"/>
    <!-- Other component markup here -->
    <p>My component</p>
</aura:component>
```

This client-side controller checks that the `aura:doneRendering` event has been fired only once.

```
((
doneRendering: function(cmp, event, helper) {
    if(!cmp.get("v.isDoneRendering")){
        cmp.set("v.isDoneRendering", true);
        //do something after component is first rendered
    }
})
```



```
}  
})
```

 **Note:** When `aura:doneRendering` is fired, `component.isRendered()` returns `true`. To check if your element is visible in the DOM, use utilities such as `component.getElement()`, `component.hasClass()`, or `element.style.display`.

The `aura:doneRendering` handler contains these required attributes.

Attribute Name	Type	Description
<code>event</code>	String	The name of the event, which must be set to <code>aura:doneRendering</code> .
<code>action</code>	Object	The client-side controller action that handles the event.

aura:doneWaiting

Indicates that the app or component is done waiting for a response to a server request. This event is preceded by an `aura:waiting` event. This event is fired after `aura:waiting`.

This event is automatically fired if no more response from the server is expected. The `aura:doneWaiting` event is handled by a client-side controller. A component can have only one `<aura:handler event="aura:doneWaiting">` tag to handle this event.

```
<aura:handler event="aura:doneWaiting" action="{!c.hideSpinner}"/>
```

This example hides a spinner when `aura:doneWaiting` is fired.

```
<aura:component>  
    <aura:handler event="aura:doneWaiting" action="{!c.hideSpinner}"/>  
    <!-- Other component markup here -->  
    <center><ui:spinner aura:id="spinner"/></center>  
</aura:component>
```

This client-side controller fires an event that hides the spinner.

```
((  
    hideSpinner : function (component, event, helper) {  
        var spinner = component.find('spinner');  
        var evt = spinner.get("e.toggle");  
        evt.setParams({ isVisible : false });  
        evt.fire();  
    }  
))
```

The `aura:doneWaiting` handler contains these required attributes.

Attribute Name	Type	Description
<code>event</code>	String	The name of the event, which must be set to <code>aura:doneWaiting</code> .
<code>action</code>	Object	The client-side controller action that handles the event.

aura:locationChange

Indicates that the hash part of the URL has changed.

This event is automatically fired when the hash part of the URL has changed, such as when a new location token is appended to the hash. The `aura:locationChange` event is handled by a client-side controller. A component can have only one `<aura:handler event="aura:locationChange">` tag to handle this event.

```
<aura:handler event="aura:locationChange" action="{!c.update}"/>
```

This client-side controller handles the `aura:locationChange` event.

```
((  
    update : function (component, event, helper) {  
        // Get the new location token from the event  
        var loc = event.getParam("token");  
        // Do something else  
    }  
))
```

The `aura:locationChange` handler contains these required attributes.

Attribute Name	Type	Description
event	String	The name of the event, which must be set to <code>aura:locationChange</code> .
action	Object	The client-side controller action that handles the event.

The `aura:locationChange` event contains these attributes.

Attribute Name	Type	Description
token	String	The hash part of the URL.
querystring	Object	The query string portion of the hash.

aura:systemError

Indicates that an error has occurred.

This event is fired when a `$A.auraFriendlyError` error is thrown. Handle the `aura:systemError` event in a client-side controller. A component can have only one `<aura:handler event="aura:systemError">` tag to handle this event.

```
<aura:handler event="aura:systemError" action="{!c.handleError}"/>
```

Throw the error using `$A.auraFriendlyError()` and setting an error message.

```
((  
    throwError : function(cmp, event){  
  
        var error = new $A.auraFriendlyError();  
        error.data = {"myMessage": "Something went wrong! Please try again later."};  
        throw error;  
    }  
))
```

```
}
})
```

Before you handle the error, set `error["handled"]=true` to signal that you'll be providing your own error handler. Set the error message using `error.data["myMessage"]` to inform users of the error.

The `aura:systemError` handler contains these required attributes.

Attribute Name	Type	Description
event	String	The name of the event, which must be set to <code>aura:systemError</code> .
action	Object	The client-side controller action that handles the event.

The `aura:systemError` event contains these attributes. You can retrieve the attribute values using `event.getParam("message")`.

Attribute Name	Type	Description
message	String	The error message.
error	String	The name of the error, <code>AuraFriendlyError</code> .
auraError	Object	The error object.

aura:valueChange

Indicates that a value has changed.

This event is automatically fired when an attribute value changes. The `aura:valueChange` event is handled by a client-side controller. A component can have multiple `<aura:handler name="change">` tags to detect changes to different attributes.

```
<aura:handler name="change" value="{!v.items}" action="{!c.itemsChange}"/>
```

This example updates a Boolean value, which automatically fires the `aura:valueChange` event.

```
<aura:component>
  <aura:attribute name="myBool" type="Boolean" default="true"/>

  <!-- Handles the aura:valueChange event -->
  <aura:handler name="change" value="{!v.myBool}" action="{!c.handleValueChange}"/>
  <ui:button label="change value" press="{!c.changeValue}"/>
</aura:component>
```

These client-side controller actions trigger the value change and handle it.

```
{
  changeValue : function (component, event, helper) {
    component.set("v.myBool", false);
  },

  handleValueChange : function (component, event, helper) {
    //handle value change
  }
}
```

```
    }  
  })
```

The `change` handler contains these required attributes.

Attribute Name	Type	Description
<code>name</code>	String	The name of the handler, which must be set to <code>change</code> .
<code>value</code>	Object	The value for which you want to detect changes.
<code>action</code>	Object	The client-side controller action that handles the value change.

aura:valueDestroy

Indicates that a value is being destroyed.

This event is automatically fired when an attribute value is being destroyed. The `aura:valueDestroy` event is handled by a client-side controller. A component can have only one `<aura:handler name="destroy">` tag to handle this event.

```
<aura:handler name="destroy" value="{!this}" action="{!c.handleDestroy}"/>
```

This client-side controller handles the `aura:valueDestroy` event.

```
{  
  valueDestroy : function (component, event, helper) {  
    var val = event.getParam("value");  
    // Do something else here  
  }  
}
```

For example, let's say that you are viewing your Lightning component in the Salesforce1 app. This `aura:valueDestroy` event is triggered when you tap on a different menu item on the Salesforce1 navigation menu, and your component is destroyed. In this example, the `token` attribute returns the component that's being destroyed.

The `destroy` handler contains these required attributes.

Attribute Name	Type	Description
<code>name</code>	String	The name of the handler, which must be set to <code>destroy</code> .
<code>value</code>	Object	The value for which you want to detect the event for.
<code>action</code>	Object	The client-side controller action that handles the value change.

The `aura:valueDestroy` event contains these attributes.

Attribute Name	Type	Description
<code>value</code>	String	The value being destroyed, which is retrieved via <code>event.getParam("value")</code> .

aura:valueInit

Indicates that a value has been initialized. This event is triggered on app or component initialization.

This event is automatically fired when an app or component is initialized, prior to rendering. The `aura:valueInit` event is handled by a client-side controller. A component can have only one `<aura:handler name="init">` tag to handle this event.

```
<aura:handler name="init" value="{!this}" action="{!c.doInit}"/>
```

For an example, see [Invoking Actions on Component Initialization](#) on page 137.



Note: Setting `value="{!this}"` marks this as a value event. You should always use this setting for an `init` event.

The `init` handler contains these required attributes.

Attribute Name	Type	Description
<code>name</code>	String	The name of the handler, which must be set to <code>init</code> .
<code>value</code>	Object	The value that is initialized, which must be set to <code>{!this}</code> .
<code>action</code>	Object	The client-side controller action that handles the value change.

aura:waiting

Indicates that the app or component is waiting for a response to a server request. This event is fired before `aura:doneWaiting`.

This event is automatically fired when a server-side action is added using `$A.enqueueAction()` and subsequently run, or when it's expecting a response from an Apex controller. The `aura:waiting` event is handled by a client-side controller. A component can have only one `<aura:handler event="aura:waiting">` tag to handle this event.

```
<aura:handler event="aura:waiting" action="{!c.showSpinner}"/>
```

This example shows a spinner when `aura:waiting` is fired.

```
<aura:component>
    <aura:handler event="aura:waiting" action="{!c.showSpinner}"/>
    <!-- Other component markup here -->
    <center><ui:spinner aura:id="spinner"/></center>
</aura:component>
```

This client-side controller fires an event that displays the spinner.

```
((
    showSpinner : function (component, event, helper) {
        var spinner = component.find('spinner');
        var evt = spinner.get("e.toggle");
        evt.setParams({ isVisible : true });
        evt.fire();
    }
}))
```

The `aura:waiting` handler contains these required attributes.

Attribute Name	Type	Description
<code>event</code>	String	The name of the event, which must be set to <code>aura:waiting</code> .
<code>action</code>	Object	The client-side controller action that handles the event.

Supported HTML Tags

An HTML tag is treated as a first-class component by the framework. Each HTML tag is translated into a component, allowing it to enjoy the same rights and privileges as any other component.

We recommend that you use components in preference to HTML tags. For example, use `ui:button` instead of `<button>`.

Components are designed with accessibility in mind so users with disabilities or those who use assistive technologies can also use your app. When you start building more complex components, the reusable out-of-the-box components can simplify your job by handling some of the plumbing that you would otherwise have to create yourself. Also, these components are secure and optimized for performance.

Note that you must use strict [XHTML](#). For example, use `
` instead of `
`.

The majority of HTML5 tags are supported.

Some HTML tags are unsafe or unnecessary. The framework doesn't support these tags:

- `applet`
- `base`
- `basefont`
- `embed`
- `font`
- `frame`
- `frameset`
- `isindex`
- `noframes`
- `noscript`
- `object`
- `param`
- `svg`

SEE ALSO:

[Supporting Accessibility](#)

Supported aura:attribute Types

`aura:attribute` describes an attribute available on an app, interface, component, or event.

Attribute Name	Type	Description
<code>access</code>	String	Indicates whether the attribute can be used outside of its own namespace. Possible values are <code>internal</code> (default), <code>private</code> , <code>public</code> , and <code>global</code> .
<code>name</code>	String	Required. The name of the attribute. For example, if you set <code><aura:attribute name="isTrue" type="Boolean" /></code> on a component called <code>aura:newCmp</code> , you can set this attribute when you instantiate the component; for example, <code><aura:newCmp isTrue="false" /></code> .
<code>type</code>	String	Required. The type of the attribute. For a list of basic types supported, see Basic Types .
<code>default</code>	String	The default value for the attribute, which can be overwritten as needed. You can't use an expression to set the default value of an attribute. Instead, to set a dynamic default, use an <code>init</code> event. See Invoking Actions on Component Initialization on page 137.
<code>required</code>	Boolean	Determines if the attribute is required. The default is <code>false</code> .
<code>description</code>	String	A summary of the attribute and its usage.
<code>serializeTo</code>	String	For optimization. Determines if the attribute is transported from server to client or from client to server. Attributes are transported in JSON format. Valid values are <code>SERVER</code> , <code>BOTH</code> , or <code>NONE</code> . The default is <code>BOTH</code> . Specify <code>SERVER</code> if you don't want to serialize the attribute to the client. Specify <code>NONE</code> if you don't need the attribute to be serialized at all. For example, use <code>NONE</code> if it's a client-side only attribute. If you have a JavaScript object array that must be accessible to markup but don't have a requirement on how the objects are constructed, you can use <code><aura:attribute name="myObj" type="List" serializeTo="NONE"></code> .

All `<aura:attribute>` tags have name and type values. For example:

```
<aura:attribute name="whom" type="String" />
```



Note: Although type values are case insensitive, case sensitivity should be respected as your markup interacts with JavaScript, CSS, and Java.

SEE ALSO:

[Component Attributes](#)

Basic Types

Here are the supported basic type values. Some of these types correspond to the wrapper objects for primitives in Java. Since the framework is written in Java, defaults, such as maximum size for a number, for these basic types are defined by the Java objects that they map to.

type	Example	Description
Boolean	<code><aura:attribute name="showDetail" type="Boolean" /></code>	Valid values are <code>true</code> or <code>false</code> . To set a default value of <code>true</code> , add <code>default="true"</code> .
Date	<code><aura:attribute name="startDate" type="Date" /></code>	A date corresponding to a calendar day in the format <code>yyyy-mm-dd</code> . The <code>hh:mm:ss</code> portion of the date is not stored. To include time fields, use <code>DateTime</code> instead.
DateTime	<code><aura:attribute name="lastModifiedDate" type="DateTime" /></code>	A date corresponding to a timestamp. It includes date and time details with millisecond precision.
Decimal	<code><aura:attribute name="totalPrice" type="Decimal" /></code>	Decimal values can contain fractional portions (digits to the right of the decimal). Maps to java.math.BigDecimal . Decimal is better than <code>Double</code> for maintaining precision for floating-point calculations. It's preferable for currency fields.
Double	<code><aura:attribute name="widthInchesFractional" type="Double" /></code>	Double values can contain fractional portions. Maps to java.lang.Double . Use <code>Decimal</code> for currency fields instead.
Integer	<code><aura:attribute name="numRecords" type="Integer" /></code>	Integer values can contain numbers with no fractional portion. Maps to java.lang.Integer , which defines its limits, such as maximum size.
Long	<code><aura:attribute name="numSwissBankAccount" type="Long" /></code>	Long values can contain numbers with no fractional portion. Maps to java.lang.Long , which defines its limits, such as maximum size. Use this data type when you need a range of values wider than those provided by <code>Integer</code> .
String	<code><aura:attribute name="message" type="String" /></code>	A sequence of characters.

You can use arrays for each of these basic types. For example:

```
<aura:attribute name="favoriteColors" type="String[]" />
```

To retrieve a string array from your Java controller, use `List<String>`.

```
public List<String> getStringList() {
    List<String> colors = new List<>();
    colors.add("red");
    colors.add("blue");
    return colors;
}
```


Object Types

An attribute can have a type corresponding to an Object.

```
<aura:attribute name="data" type="Object" />
```

For example, you may want to create an attribute of type Object to pass a JavaScript array as an event parameter. In the component event, declare the event parameter using `aura:attribute`.

```
<aura:event type="COMPONENT">
    <aura:attribute name="arrayAsObject" type="Object" />
</aura:event>
```

In JavaScript code, you can set the attribute of type Object.

```
// Set the event parameters
var event = component.getEvent(eventType);
event.setParams({
    arrayAsObject: ["file1", "file2", "file3"]
});
event.fire();
```

Collection Types

Here are the supported collection type values.

type	Example	Description
List	<pre><aura:attribute name="colorPalette" type="List" default="red,green,blue" /></pre>	An ordered collection of items.
Map	<pre><aura:attribute name="sectionLabels" type="Map" default="{ a: 'label1', b: 'label2' }" /></pre>	A collection that maps keys to values. A map can't contain duplicate keys. Each key can map to at most one value. Defaults to an empty object, <code>{ }</code> . Retrieve values by using <code>cmp.get("v.sectionLabels")['a']</code> .
Set	<pre><aura:attribute name="collection" type="Set" default="1,2,3" /></pre>	A collection that contains no duplicate elements. The order for set items is not guaranteed. For example, <code>"1,2,3"</code> might be returned as <code>"3,2,1"</code> .

Setting List Items

There are several ways to set items in a list. To use a client-side controller, create an attribute of type List and set the items using `component.set()`.

This example retrieves a list of numbers from a client-side controller when a button is clicked.

```
<aura:attribute name="numbers" type="List"/>
<ui:button press="{!c.getNumbers}" label="Display Numbers" />
<aura:iteration var="num" items="{!v.numbers}">
```

```
{!num.value}
</aura:iteration>
```

```
/** Client-side Controller */
({
  getNumbers: function(component, event, helper) {
    var numbers = [];
    for (var i = 0; i < 20; i++) {
      numbers.push({
        value: i
      });
    }
    component.set("v.numbers", numbers);
  }
})
```

To retrieve list data from a model, use `aura:iteration`. This example retrieves data from a model, assuming that you have set the `model` attribute on the `aura:component` tag.

```
<aura:attribute name="sizes" type="List"/>
<aura:iteration items="{!m.sizes}" var="size">
  {!size.value}
</aura:iteration>
```

```
/** Server-side Model */
@Model
public class MyModel {
  public List<MyDataType> getSizes() {
    ArrayList<MyDataType> s = new ArrayList<MyDataType>(2);
    //Set list items here
    return s;
  }
}
```

Setting Map Items

To add a key and value pair to a map, use the syntax `myMap['myNewKey'] = myNewValue`.

```
var myMap = cmp.get("v.sectionLabels");
myMap['c'] = 'label3';
```

The following example retrieves data from a map.

```
for (key in myMap){
  //do something
}
```

SEE ALSO:

[Java Models](#)

[Custom Java Class Types](#)

Custom Java Class Types

An attribute can have a type corresponding to a Java class. For example, this is an attribute for a `Color` Java class:

```
<aura:attribute name="color" type="java://org.docsample.Color" />
```

If you create a custom Java type, it must implement `JsonSerializable` to enable marshalling from the server to the client. For example, see [Note.java](#) in the Aura Note sample app.

Support for Collections

If an `<aura:attribute>` can contain more than one element, use a `List` instead of an array.



Note: You can't declare an `<aura:attribute>` to be an array of a custom Java type.

The following `aura:attribute` shows the syntax for a `List` of Java objects:

```
<aura:attribute name="colorPalette" type="List" />
```

You can also use `type="java://List"` instead of `type="List"`. Both definitions are functionally equivalent.

```
<aura:attribute name="colorPalette" type="java://List" />
```

Framework-Specific Types

Here are the supported type values that are specific to the framework.

type	Example	Description
<code>Aura.Component</code>	N/A	A single component. We recommend using <code>Aura.Component []</code> instead.
<code>Aura.Component []</code>	<pre><aura:attribute name="detail" type="Aura.Component []"/></pre> <p>To set a default value for <code>type="Aura.Component []"</code>, put the default markup in the body of <code>aura:attribute</code>. For example:</p> <pre><aura:component> <aura:attribute name="detail" type="Aura.Component []"> <p>default paragraph1</p> </aura:attribute> Default value is: {!v.detail} </aura:component></pre>	Use this type to set blocks of markup. An attribute of type <code>Aura.Component []</code> is called a facet.

type	Example	Description
<code>Aura.Action</code>	<pre><aura:attribute name="onclick" type="Aura.Action"/></pre>	Use this type to pass an action to a component.

SEE ALSO:

[Component Body](#)

[Component Facets](#)

Using the Action Type

An `Aura.Action` is a reference to an action in the framework. You can pass an `Aura.Action` around so the receiving component can execute the action in its client-side controller.

Use `$A.enqueueAction()` to add client-side or server-side controller actions to the queue of actions to be executed.

The Aura Note sample app uses `Aura.Action` in the `listRow` component.

`listRow.cmp`

```
<aura:component extensible="true">
    ...
    <aura:attribute name="onclick" type="Aura.Action"/>
    ...
    <li onclick="{!v.onclick}">
        ...
    </li>
</aura:component>
```

The `onclick` attribute has `type="Aura.Action"`.

`noteListRow.cmp`

```
<aura:component extends="auranote:listRow">
    ...
    <aura:set attribute="onclick" value="{!c.openNote}"/>
    ...
</aura:component>
```

The `noteListRow` component extends the `listRow` component and sets the value for the `onclick` attribute in `listRow` to `{!c.openNote}`, which is a reference to an action in the client-side controller for `noteListRow.cmp`. The action is executed when a user clicks the bullet associated with `<li onclick="{!v.onclick}">` in `listRow`.

SEE ALSO:

[Handling Events with Client-Side Controllers](#)

APPENDIX

CHAPTER 28 Aura Request Lifecycle

In this chapter ...

- [Initial Application Request](#)
- [Component Request Lifecycle](#)

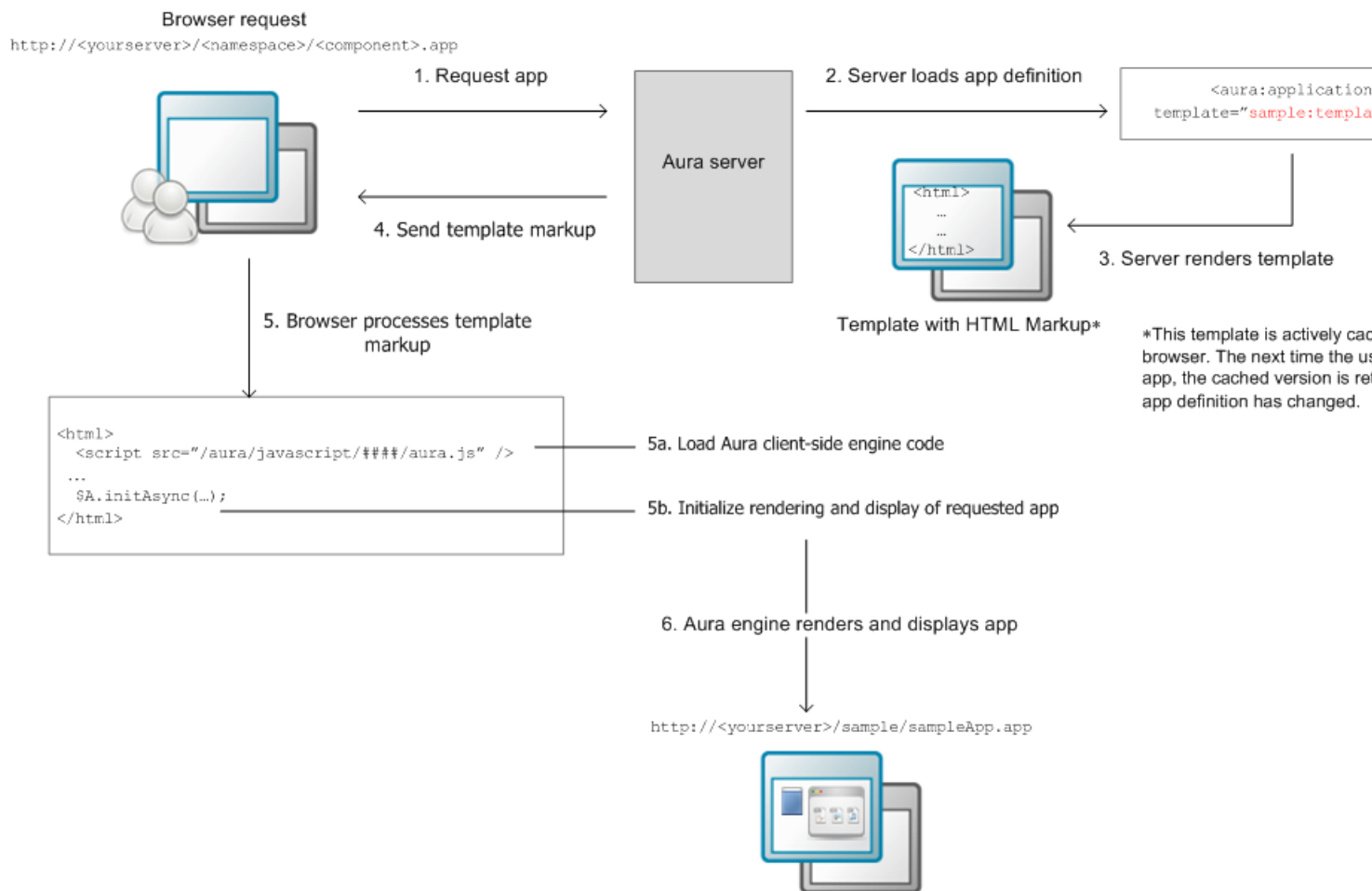
This section shows how Aura handles the initial request for an application, as well as a component request. You can use Aura without knowing these details but read on if you are curious about how things work under the covers.

Initial Application Request

When you make a request to load an application on a browser, Aura returns an HTTP response with a default template, denoted by the template attribute in the `.app` file. The template contains JavaScript tags that make requests to get your application data.

The browser renders the specified template and loads the Aura engine and the component definitions in the dependency tree of the app. The Aura engine renders the requested application. The Aura engine processes the application markup, and translates the component markup to HTML objects, returning the DOM elements that are rendered to the browser.

This diagram illustrates the component request lifecycle.



SEE ALSO:

[Component Request Overview](#)

Component Request Lifecycle

When a component is requested, Aura retrieves the relevant metadata and data from the server to construct the component. The framework uses the metadata and data to construct the component on the client, enabling the client to render the component.

IN THIS SECTION:

[Component Request Overview](#)

[Server-Side Processing for Component Requests](#)

[Client-Side Processing for Component Requests](#)

[Component Request Glossary](#)

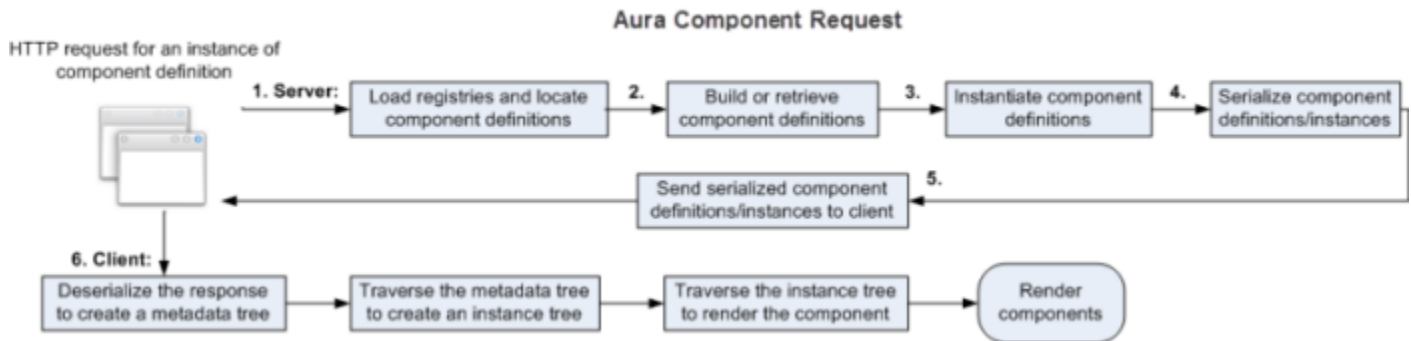
Component Request Overview

Aura performs initial construction of a component on the server. The client completes the initialization process and manages any rendering or rerendering.

Before we explore the component request process, it's important to understand these terms.

Term	Description
Definition	<p>Each definition describes metadata for an element, such as a component, event, controller, or model. A large part of Aura is a registry of definitions for its various elements.</p> <p>A definition's metadata can include a name, location of origin, and descriptor (DefDescriptor, the primary key of the definition).</p>
DefDescriptor	<p>A DefDescriptor acts as a key for a definition in a registry. It's an Aura class that contains the metadata for any definition used in Aura, such as a component, action, or event. In the example of a model, it is a nicely parsed description of <code>model="java://myPackage.MyClass"</code> with methods to retrieve the language, class name, and package name. Rather than passing a more heavyweight definition around in code, Aura usually passes around a DefDescriptor instead.</p> <p>The qualified name for a DefDescriptor has a format of either <code>prefix://namespace:name</code> or <code>prefix://namespace.name</code>. For example, <code>js://ui.button</code>.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <code>prefix</code>: Defines the language, such as JavaScript or Java • <code>namespace</code>: Corresponds to the package name or XML namespace • <code>name</code>: Corresponds to the class name or local name
Instance	<p>An instance represents the data for a component, event, or action. The component data is contained in its model and attributes.</p>
Registry	<p>Registries store metadata definitions. Some registries last for the duration of a request, while others are cached for the lifetime of the app server. They may be created during the request process and destroyed when the server completes the request. A master definition registry contains a list of registries for each Aura resource.</p>

Let's see what happens when a client requests a component at the server via an HTTP request in the form `http://<yourServer>/namespace/<component>.cmp`.



Here's how a component request is processed on the server and client:

The server:

1. Loads registries and locates component definitions
2. Builds or retrieves component definitions
3. Instantiates component definitions
4. Serializes component definitions and instances
5. Sends serialized component definitions and instances to the client

The client:

1. Deserializes the response to create a metadata tree
2. Traverses the metadata tree to create an instance tree
3. Traverses the instance tree to render the component
4. Renders the component

SEE ALSO:

[Server-Side Processing for Component Requests](#)

[Client-Side Processing for Component Requests](#)

Server-Side Processing for Component Requests

A component lifecycle starts when the client sends an HTTP request to the server, which can be in the form `http://<yourServer>/<namespace>/<component>.cmp`. Attributes can be included in the query string, such as `http://<yourServer>/<namespace>/<component>.cmp?title=Component1`. If attributes are not specified, the defaults that are defined in the attribute definition are used.

For a component request, the server:

1. Load registries and locates component definitions.
2. Build or retrieves component definitions.
3. Instantiate component definitions.
4. Serialize component definitions and instances.
5. Send serialized component definitions and instances to the client.

1. Load registries and locate component definitions.

When the server receives an HTTP request, the Aura framework is loaded according to the specified mode. `AuraContextFilter` creates a `AuraContext`, which contains the mode denoted by the `aura.mode` parameter in the URL, such as in `http://<yourServer>/namespace/<component>.cmp?aura.mode=PROD`. Aura uses the default mode if the `aura.mode` parameter is not included in the query string.

The server receives and parses the request for an instance of a component definition (`ComponentDef`). If attributes are included, Aura converts them to strongly typed attributes for the component definition.

Next, the registries are loaded. Registries store metadata for Aura objects. They may be created during the request process and destroyed when the server completes the request.

A master definition registry (`MasterDefRegistry`) contains a list of registries (`DefRegistry`) that are used to load and cache definitions. A separate registry is used for each Aura object, such as actions, or controllers.

2. Build or retrieve component definitions.

This stage of the process retrieves the component's metadata, known as the `ComponentDef`.

After the relevant registries are identified, the server determines if the requested `ComponentDef` is already cached.

- If it's cached in a registry or found in other locations, the `ComponentDef` is returned and the component definition tree is updated to include the definition. The `ComponentDef` is cached, including its references to other `ComponentDefs`, attributes, events, controller, and resources, such as CSS styles.
- If the `ComponentDef` is not cached, the server locates and parses the source code to construct the `ComponentDef`. The server also identifies the language and definition type of the `ComponentDef`.

Any dependencies on other definitions are also determined. Dependencies may include definitions for interfaces, controllers, actions, and models. A `DefRegistry` that doesn't contain the `ComponentDef` passes the request to a `DefFactory`, which builds the definition.

Each component definition in the tree is parsed iteratively. The process is completed when the `ComponentDef` tree doesn't contain any unparsed `ComponentDefs`.

3. Instantiate component definitions.

Once the server completes the component definition process, it can create a component instance. To start this instantiation, the `ComponentDef` (a root definition) is retrieved along with any attribute definitions and references to other components. The next steps are:

- **Determine component definition type:** Aura determines whether the root component definition is abstract or concrete.
- **Create component instances:**
 - **Abstract:** Aura can instantiate abstract component definitions using a provider to determine the concrete component to use at runtime.
 - **Concrete:** Aura constructs a component instance and any properties associated with it, along with its super component. Attribute values of the component definitions are loaded, and can consist of other component definitions, which are instantiated recursively.
- **Create model instances:** After the super component definition is instantiated, Aura creates any associated component model that hasn't been instantiated.
- **Create attribute instances:** Aura instantiates all remaining attributes. If the attribute refers to an uninstantiated component definition, the latter is instantiated. Non-component attribute values may come from a client request as a literal or expression, which can be derived from a super component definition, a model, or other component definitions. Expressions can be resolved on the client side to allow data to be refreshed dynamically.

The instantiation process terminates when the component and all its child nodes have been instantiated. Note that controllers are not instantiated since they are static and don't have any state.

4. Serialize component definition and instances.

Aura enables dynamic rendering on the client side through a JSON serialization process, which begins after instantiation completes. Aura serializes:

- The component instance tree
- Data for the component instance tree
- Metadata for the component instance tree

When the current object has been serialized but it's not the root object corresponding to the requested component, its parent objects are serialized recursively.

5. Send serialized component definitions and instances to client.

The server sends the serialized component definitions and instances to the client. Definitions are cached but the instance data is not cached.

The definitions are transmitted in the following format:

```
{ "descriptor": "markup://aura:component",
  "rendererDef": { "serRefId": 2 },
  "attributeDefs": [ { "serId": 20,
    "value": { "descriptor": "body",
      "typeDefDescriptor": "aura://Aura.Component[]",
      "required": false } },
    "interfaces": [ "markup://aura:rootComponent" ],
    "isAbstract": true }
```

The component instance tree is transmitted in the following format:

```
$A.initAsync({ "context": { "mode": "DEV", "app": "auradocs:sample",
  "requestedLocales": [ "en_US", "en" ] },
  "deftype": "APPLICATION",
  "descriptor": "markup://auradocs:sample",
  "host": "",
  "lastmod": 1323498293847 } });
```

SEE ALSO:

- [Server-Side Runtime Binding of Components](#)
- [Initial Application Request](#)
- [Component Request Glossary](#)

Client-Side Processing for Component Requests

After the server processes the request, it returns the component definitions (metadata for the all required components) and instance tree (data) in JSON format.

The client performs these tasks:

1. Deserialize the response to create a metadata tree.

2. Traverse the metadata tree to create an instance tree.
3. Traverse the instance tree to render the component.
4. Render the components.

1. Deserialize the response to create a metadata tree.

The JSON representation of the component definition is deserialized to create a metadata structure (JavaScript objects or maps). By default, any Map, Array, Number, Boolean, String or nulls are supported for serialization and deserialization. Other objects can provide custom serialization by implementing the `JsonSerializable` interface.

2. Traverse the metadata tree to create an instance tree.

The client traverses the JavaScript tree to initialize objects from the deserialized tree. The tree can contain:

- Definition: The client initializes the definition.
- Descriptor only: The client knows that definition has been pre-loaded and cached.

As part of component initialization, client-side framework code are cached alongside your JavaScript code and CSS.

3. Traverse the instance tree to render the component.

After component initialization, the client traverses the instance tree to render the component instance. The reference IDs are used to recreate the component references, which can point to a `ComponentDef`, a model, or a controller.

4. Render the components.

The client locates the renderer definition in the component bundle, or uses the default renderer method to render the component and any sub-components recursively. This adds the components to the DOM. For more information on the rendering lifecycle, see [Events Fired During the Rendering Lifecycle](#) on page 107.

SEE ALSO:

[Server-Side Rendering to the DOM](#)

[Initial Application Request](#)

[Component Request Glossary](#)

Component Request Glossary

This glossary explains terms related to Aura definitions and registries.

Definition-related Term	Example	Description
Definition	<code>aura:component</code>	Each definition describes metadata for an object, such as a component, event, controller, or model. A large part of Aura is a registry of definitions for its various objects.

Definition-related Term	Example	Description
		<p>A definition's metadata can include a name, location of origin, and descriptor (<code>DefDescriptor</code>, the primary key of the definition).</p> <p>A component definition can be used by other component definitions and can extend another component definition.</p>
Root Definition	<p><code>ComponentDef</code></p> <p><code>InterfaceDef</code></p> <p><code>EventDef</code></p>	Top-level definition. Markup language for a root definition can include a pointer to another definition, and references to the descriptors of associate definitions.
Associate Definition	<p><code>ControllerDef</code></p> <p><code>ModelDef</code></p> <p><code>ProviderDef</code></p> <p><code>RendererDef</code></p> <p><code>StyleDef</code></p> <p><code>TestSuiteDef</code></p>	Associate definitions represent objects that are associated with a root definition. An instance of an associate definition can be shared by multiple root definitions. Associate definitions have their own factories, parsers, and caching layers.
Subdefinition	<p><code>AttributeDef</code></p> <p><code>RegisterEventDef</code></p> <p><code>ActionDef</code></p> <p><code>TestCaseDef</code></p> <p><code>ValueDef</code></p>	<p>Subdefinitions can be used to define root definitions or associate definitions. They are stored directly on their parent definitions.</p> <p>For example, a <code>ComponentDef</code> can include multiple <code>AttributeDef</code> objects, and a <code>ControllerDef</code> can include multiple <code>ActionDef</code> objects.</p>
Definition Reference	<p><code>DefRef</code></p> <p><code>ComponentDefRef</code></p> <p><code>AttributeDefRef</code></p>	<p>A subdefinition that points to another definition. At runtime, it can be turned into an instance of the definition to which it points.</p> <p>For example, when a component is instantiated, the component definition can include attribute definition references for each component attribute. The attribute definition reference points to the underlying attribute definition.</p>
Provider		For abstract definition types. A provider determines the concrete <code>ComponentDef</code> to instantiate for each abstract <code>ComponentDef</code> . A provider enables an abstract component definition to be used directly in markup.

Registry-related Terms	Example	Description
Master Definition Registry	<code>MasterDefRegistry</code>	<code>MasterDefRegistry</code> is a top-level <code>DefRegistry</code> that lives for the duration of a request. It is a thin redirector to various

Registry-related Terms	Example	Description
		long-lived definition registries that load and cache definitions.
Definition Registry	DefRegistry	<p>A <code>DefRegistry</code> loads and caches a list of definitions, such as <code>ActionDef</code>, <code>ApplicationDef</code>, <code>ComponentDef</code>, or <code>ControllerDef</code>. A separate registry is used for all Aura objects. If the definition is not found, the request is passed to <code>DefFactory</code>, an interface that builds the definition.</p>
Definition Descriptor	DefDescriptor	<p>A <code>DefDescriptor</code> acts as a key for a definition in a registry. It's a class that contains the metadata for any definition used in Aura, such as a component, action, or event. In the example of a model, it is a nicely parsed description of <code>model="java://myPackage.MyClass"</code> with methods to retrieve the language, class name, and package name. Rather than passing a more heavyweight definition around in code, Aura usually passes around a <code>DefDescriptor</code> instead.</p> <p>The qualified name for a <code>DefDescriptor</code> has the format <code>prefix://namespace:name</code>.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <code>prefix</code>: Defines the language, such as JavaScript or Java • <code>namespace</code>: Corresponds to the package name or XML namespace • <code>name</code>: Corresponds to the class name or local name

INDEX

\$Browser [34](#)
\$Label [34](#), [71](#)
\$Locale [34–35](#)

A

- Access control
 - application [189](#)
 - attribute [190](#)
 - component [189](#)
 - event [190](#)
 - interface [189](#)
- accessibility
 - error codes [85](#)
- Accessibility
 - audio messages [81](#)
 - buttons [80](#)
 - carousels [80](#)
 - dialog [83](#)
 - events [83](#)
 - help and error messages [81](#)
 - images [82](#)
 - images, informational and decorative [82](#)
 - menus [84](#)
- Actions
 - background [157](#)
 - caboose [160](#)
 - calling server-side [153](#)
 - queueing [155](#)
 - storable [160](#)
- Adapters
 - overriding [223](#)
- Anti-patterns
 - events [106](#)
- API calls [135](#)
- Application
 - attributes [234](#)
 - aura:application [234](#)
 - building and running [5](#)
 - creating [111](#)
 - creating, from command line [6](#)
 - creating, in Eclipse [6](#)
 - initial request [260](#)
 - layout and UI [112](#)
 - styling [115](#)
- Application cache
 - browser support [185](#)
- Application cache (*continued*)
 - enabling [186](#)
 - loading [186](#)
 - overview [185](#)
 - specifying resources [186](#)
- Application templates
 - external CSS [113](#)
 - JavaScript libraries [113](#)
- Applications
 - CSS [115](#)
 - overview [112](#)
 - styling [115](#)
- Apps
 - overview [112](#)
- Attribute types
 - Aura.Action [257–258](#)
 - Aura.Component [257](#)
 - basic [253](#)
 - collection [255](#)
 - custom Java class [257](#)
 - Object [255](#)
- Attribute value, setting [244](#)
- Attributes
 - component reference, setting on [245](#)
 - interface, setting on [246](#)
 - JavaScript [120](#)
 - super component, setting on [244](#)
- Aura
 - request lifecycle [259](#)
- Aura Note, sample app [10](#)
- Aura source
 - building [8](#)
- aura:application [234](#)
- aura:attribute [252](#)
- aura:clientLibrary [236](#)
- aura:component [235](#)
- aura:dependency [238](#)
- aura:doneRendering [246](#)
- aura:doneWaiting [247](#)
- aura:event [239](#)
- aura:if [23](#), [30](#), [239](#)
- aura:interface [240](#)
- aura:iteration [241](#)
- aura:locationChange [248](#)
- aura:method [242](#)
- aura:renderIf [23](#), [243](#)

- aura:set [244–245](#)
- aura:systemError [248](#)
- aura:template [113](#)
- aura:valueChange [249](#)
- aura:valueDestroy [250](#)
- aura:valuelnit [251](#)
- aura:waiting [251](#)
- Aura.Action [258](#)

B

- Benefits [2](#)
- Best practices
 - events [106](#)
- Body
 - JavaScript [122](#)
- Browser support [3](#)

C

- Client-side controllers [90](#)
- Component
 - abstract [177](#)
 - adding to an app [7](#)
 - attributes [17](#)
 - aura:component [235](#)
 - aura:interface [240](#)
 - body, setting and accessing [21](#)
 - definition [265](#)
 - documentation [26](#)
 - iteration [241](#)
 - metadata [265](#)
 - namespace and directory [7](#)
 - nest [18](#)
 - registry [265](#)
 - rendering conditionally [239, 243](#)
 - rendering lifecycle [107](#)
 - request lifecycle [261](#)
 - request overview [261](#)
 - themes, vendor prefixes [115](#)
- Component attributes
 - inheritance [176](#)
- Component body
 - JavaScript [122](#)
- Component bundles [11, 14](#)
- Component definitions
 - dependency [238](#)
- Component facets [22](#)
- Component initialization [251](#)
- Component request
 - client-side processing [264](#)

- Component request (*continued*)
 - Server-side processing [262](#)
- ComponentDefRef [168](#)
- Components
 - calling methods [134](#)
 - conditional markup [23](#)
 - creating [138](#)
 - creating server-side [168](#)
 - CSS [115](#)
 - HTML markup, using [15](#)
 - ID, local and global [15](#)
 - markup [11–12](#)
 - methods [242](#)
 - modifying [129](#)
 - namespace [13](#)
 - overview [11](#)
 - styling [115](#)
 - styling with CSS [16](#)
 - support level [11](#)
 - unescaping HTML [15](#)
 - view [13](#)

- Conditional expressions [30](#)

- Controllers
 - calling server-side actions [153](#)
 - client-side [90](#)
 - creating [152](#)

- Converters
 - examples [229](#)
 - registering [228](#)

- Cookbook
 - Java [167](#)
 - JavaScript [136](#)

- CSS
 - external [115, 236](#)
 - custom [37](#)
- Custom Converters
 - examples [229](#)
 - registering [228](#)

D

- Data binding
 - expressions [31](#)
- Data changes
 - detecting [137](#)
- Debugging
 - mode [198](#)
 - querying state and statistics [219](#)
 - test assertions [196](#)
 - user interactions [198](#)

- DefDescriptor 169
- Demos 10
- Detect data changes 249
- Detecting
 - data changes 137
- DOM 118
- Dynamic output 30

E

- Errors 132
- Event handlers 141
- Events
 - anti-patterns 106
 - application 96, 98
 - aura events 246
 - aura:doneRendering 246
 - aura:doneWaiting 247
 - aura:event 239
 - aura:locationChange 248
 - aura:systemError 248
 - aura:valueChange 249
 - aura:valueDestroy 250
 - aura:valuelnit 251
 - aura:waiting 251
 - best practices 106
 - component 92, 94
 - demo 101
 - example 94, 98
 - firing from non-Aura code 105
 - handling 100
 - system events 246
- Examples
 - converters 229
- Exceptions 166
- Expressions
 - conditional 30
 - data binding 31
 - dynamic output 30
 - functions 41
 - operators 37
- External CSS 236
- External JavaScript 236

G

- Global value providers 37
- globalID 34

H

- Handling Input Field Errors 130

- Helpers 123
- HTML, supported tags 252
- HTML, unescaping 15

I

- Inheritance 175, 178
- Input Field Validation 130
- InstanceService 168
- Integration service 225–226
- Interfaces
 - marker 178
- Introduction 1

J

- Java
 - controllers 152
- Java cookbook 167
- JavaScript
 - API calls 135
 - attribute values 120
 - calling component methods 134
 - component 122
 - external 236
 - get() and set() methods 120
 - libraries 118
 - sharing code in bundle 123
- JavaScript console 213
- JavaScript cookbook 136
- JSON 148

L

- Label
 - setting via parent attribute 76
- Label parameters 72
- Labels
 - dynamically creating 74
- Lazy loading 24
- Libraries
 - JavaScript 118
- Lifecycle 129
- Localization 24
- Log messages 213

M

- Markup 142
- Mocking
 - Java actions 205
 - Java models 204
 - Java providers 204

Mocking (*continued*)
 overview 202
Models
 Java 146
 JSON 148
Modes 207–208, 210

N

Namespaces 13
Navigation, metadata-driven
 custom events 173
Navigation, url-centric
 tokenized event attributes 171
Navigation,url-centric
 custom events 171

O

Object-oriented development
 inheritance 175

P

Providers 128, 164

Q

Queueing
 queueing server-side actions 155

R

Reference
 doc app 234
 overview 233
Renderers 125, 163
Rendering lifecycle 107
Request
 application 260
Request lifecycle 259
Rerendering 129

S

Server-Side Controllers
 action queueing 155
 calling actions 153
Source code 8
Storable actions 160
Storage service
 adapters 180
 initializing 182
 MemoryAdapter 180
 SmartStore 180

Storage service (*continued*)
 using 183
 WebSQL 180
Styles 143

T

Terminology 146
Ternary operator 30
Testing
 components 191
 expect error 195
 mode 191
 pass an action 195
 sample test cases 200
 Test setup 192
 Utility functions 198
Themes
 vendor prefixes 115
TodoMVC, sample app 10

U

ui components
 actionMenuItem 62
 aura:component inheritance 44
 autocomplete 65
 block 63
 button 57
 checkbox 54
 checkboxMenuItem 62
 inputCurrency 49
 inputDate 48
 inputDateTime 48
 inputDefaultError 61
 inputEmail 51
 inputNumber 49
 inputPercent 49
 inputPhone 51
 inputRadio 55
 inputRange 49
 inputRichText 51, 53
 inputSearch 51
 inputSecret 51
 inputSelect 59
 inputText 51
 inputTextArea 51
 inputURL 51
 list 67
 menu 62
 menuItemSeparator 62

Index

ui components (*continued*)

- menuTrigger [62](#)
- menuTriggerLink [62](#)
- message [61](#)
- outputCurrency [49](#)
- outputDate [48](#)
- outputDateTime [48](#)
- outputEmail [51](#)
- outputNumber [49](#)
- outputPercent [49](#)
- outputPhone [51](#)
- outputRichText [51](#), [53](#)
- outputText [51](#)
- outputTextArea [51](#)

ui components (*continued*)

- outputURL [51](#)
- radioMenuItem [62](#)
- vbox [64](#)
- ui components overview [47](#)
- ui events [47](#)

V

Value providers

- \$Label [71](#)

Version numbers [3](#)

W

Warnings [214](#)